# **Stochastic Processes**

STAT-150 Lecture Series, Jim Pitman

(version 1.11, updated 11/01/2019)

# Fall 2019 University of California, Berkeley

This document is intended to capture lecture material into a referential and well-prepared resource for the cohort of students taking the STAT-150 Stochastic Processes course taught by Jim Pitman. Many thanks to all the student contributors and a special thank-you to John-Michael Laurel and Daniel Suryakusuma.

# **Contents**

1	Sto	chastic Processes and Markov Chains	1
	1.1	Markov Chains	2
	1.2	Specifying Joint Probabilities	2
	1.3	Transition Mechanism	3
		1.3.1 Absorbing States	4
	1.4	Constructing the Joint Distribution	4
		1.4.1 Notation	5
	1.5	Simulating a Markov Chain	5
	1.6	Gambler's Ruin Chain	6
2	Trai	nsition Mechanism	7
	2.1	Action of a Transition Matrix on a Row Vector	7
		2.1.1 Conclusion	8
	2.2	Action of a Transition Matrix on a Column Vector	8
	2.3	Two Steps	ç
		2.3.1 Review: Matrix Multiplication	ç
	2.4	Techniques for Finding $P^n$ for some $P$	10
	2.5	First Example	10
	2.6	Second Example: More Challenging	11
3	Hitt	ting Times, Strong Markov Property, and State Classification	15
	3.1	Hitting Times	15
	3.2	Iterating	16
	3.3	State Classification	18
		3.3.1 Constructing $\rho_y$	18
	3.4	Lemma 1.3	19
4	Exc	hangeability, Stationary Distributions, and Two State Markov Chains	23
	4.1	Sampling without Replacement	23
	4.2	Exchangeability and Reversibility	24
	4.3	Stationary Distributions	27
	4.4	Two State Transition Matrices	30
	4.5	Two State Transition Diagrams	31
5	Rec	urrence Classes, x-Blocks, and Limit Theorem	37
		Key Points for Homework	37

	5.2	Positive and Null Recurrence	37
	5.3	Review: Mean Return Time	38
	5.4	Example: Symmetric Random Walk	38
		5.4.1 Recurrence versus Transience	39
	5.5	Notion of x-Blocks of a Markov chain	39
		5.5.1 Example: <i>x</i> -Blocks	40
	5.6	Positive Recurrent Chains (P irreducible)	40
		5.6.1 Explanation of the Key Formula	41
	5.7	Limit Theorem	42
	5.8	Review and Audience Questions	42
6	First	Step Analysis and Harmonic Equations	43
	6.1	Hitting Places	43
	6.2	Method of Solution (Durret p.54)	45
	6.3	Canonical Example: Gambler's Ruin for a Fair Coin	48
		6.3.1 Gambler's Ruin with a Biased Coin	49
7	Eirct	Step Analysis Continued	51
•	7.1	First Step Analysis: Continued	51
	1.1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	51
		The state of the s	
		7.1.2 Application: Duration of a Fair Game	52
	7.0	7.1.3 Summarizing our Findings	54
	7.2	Conditioning on other variables	55
		7.2.1 Runs in Independent Bernoulli(p) Trials	55
		7.2.2 Conditioning on the First Zero	56
8	Infin	ite State Spaces and Probability Generating Functions	59
	8.1	Infinite State Spaces	59
	8.2	Review of Mathematics: Power Series	59
		8.2.1 Binomial Theorem	59
	8.3	Probability Generating Functions	60
	8.4	Probability Generating Functions and Random Sums	63
	8.5	Application: Galton-Watson Branching Process	64
9	Pote	ential Theory (Green Matrices)	69
	9.1	Potential Theory (Green Matrices)	69
		9.1.1 Example	70
	9.2	Escape Probability	73
	9.3	More Formulas for Simple Random Walks (SRW)	73
	9.4	Green's Matrix for Finite State Space $S$	74
		9.4.1 Return to Gambler's Ruin	76
		9.4.2 Conclusion	78
	<b>_</b> ,		70
10		Fundamental Matrix of a Positive Recurrent Chain	<b>79</b>
		Comments on Homework 5	79
	10.9	Renewal Generating Functions	80

	10.3	Variance of Sums Over a Markov chain	83
		10.3.1 The Mean	84
		10.3.2 The Variance	84
		10.3.3 The Central Limit Theorem	85
	10.4	Further Applications of the Fundamental Matrix	86
		10.4.1 Stopping times	86
		10.4.2 Occupation Measures for Markov chains	89
		10.4.3 Positive recurrent chains: the ergodic theorem	92
		10.4.4 Occupation measures for recurrent chains	93
		10.4.5 The fundamental matrix of a positive recurrent chain $\dots$	96
		10.4.6 Exercises	101
	10.5	References	102
11	Pois	son Processes, Part 1	103
	11.1	Introduction: Poisson Processes	103
	11.2	Sum of Independent Poissons	105
	11.3	Poissonization of the Multinomial	105
	11.4	Poisson Point Processes (PPP)	107
		11.4.1 PPP Strips	108
	11.5	Applications	112
	11.6	Secret Method	112
12	Pois	son Processes, Part 2	113
	12.1	Theorem 2.10	113
	12.2	Generalization to a Stopping Time $N$	114
		12.2.1 Wald's Identities	114
	12.3	Poisson Thinning	116
		12.3.1 Poisson Thinning for a General Region	117
		12.3.2 Poisson Thinning for Two General Regions	118
	12.4	General Measures	119
13	Midt	term Preparation	121
	13.1	Midterm Announcements	121
	13.2	Old Midterm Exam Problems	121
		Problem 18	121
		Problem 19	121
	13.3	Intuition for Constructing Graphs of PGFs	124
	13.4	Discussion: Geometric-Negative Binomial PGFs	126
		Problem 21	127
		Problem 27	128
14	Rene	ewal Theory, Part 1	129
		Introduction to Renewal Theory	129
		Renewal Theory	130
		14.2.1 Example: Queueing Model	131
		14.2.2 Example: A Janitor Replacing Lightbulbs	132

	14.3	Weak Sense of Convergence	133
		14.3.1 Strong Law of Large Numbers	133
	14.4	Renewal Reward Theorem	137
15	Rene	ewal Theory, Part 2	139
	15.1	Age and Residual Life	139
		15.1.1 General Lifetime Distribution of $X$	141
		15.1.2 A Quick Check	144
	15.2	Exercise	145
	15.3	Queueing Theory: Terminology	147
		15.3.1 Main Examples	147
	15.4	Little's Formula	149
16	Cont	inuous Time Markov Chains, Part 1	151
	16.1	Continuous Time Markov Chains	151
		16.1.1 Derivation 1	153
		16.1.2 Derivation 2	154
		16.1.3 Aside: Sum of Exponentials with Random Geometric Index .	154
		Simple Example 1: Boring Discrete Markov Chain	157
		Simple Example 2: Compound Poisson Process	157
	16.4	Interpretation of Rate Matrix $Q$	157
17		inuous Time Markov Chains, Part 2	161
		Repairman Problem	161
	17.2	Further Remarks	163
	17.3	Analogies Between Discrete and Continuous Time Markov Chains .	164
	17.4	Corollary	165
	17.5	Examples	165

# LECTURE 1

# Stochastic Processes and Markov Chains

A stochastic process is a collection of random variables (R.V.s) that is indexed by a parameter set  $\mathcal{I}$ . We shall use the following notation

$$(X_i, i \in \mathcal{I}) = (X_i)_{i \in \mathcal{I}} \tag{1.1}$$

The parameter set commonly represents a set of times, but can extend to e.g. space or space-time. Underlying (1.1) there is always a *probability measure*  $\mathbb{P}$  on some outcome space  $\Omega$  with  $\mathbb{P}$  a function of subsets F of  $\Omega$ , ranging over a suitable collection of subsets  $\mathcal{F}$  called *events*. Use the command  $\mathbf{P}$  or  $\mathbf{P}$  in LATEX respectively.

In the canonical setup,  $\Omega$  is a product space

$$\Omega = \prod_{i \in \mathcal{I}} \mathcal{S}_i$$

where  $S_i$  is a space of values of  $X_i$ , and the  $X_i$  are just coordinate maps on this product space, and  $\mathbb{P}$  is a probability measure on the product space, with  $\mathcal{F}$  the product  $\sigma$ -field. So  $\omega = (x_i, i \in \mathcal{I}) \in \Omega$  and  $X_i(\omega) = x_i$ . But

$$(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{P})$$

could be any probability space, and each  $X_i$  a random variable defined as a function on that space. All of the italicized terms here are standard. Their definitions can be found in Wikipedia.

Here's a conversion table on notation used in the course text Durrett. Essentials of Stochastic Processes and that of these lecture notes.

Pitman	Durrett	description
$\mathbb{P}$	P	probability measure
P	p	probability transition matrix

2 1.2 Markov Chains

#### 1.1 Markov Chains

For a countable state space S, for instance  $S = \mathbb{N}_0 := \{0, 1, ...\}$ , we construct a sequence of evolving discrete R.V.s

$$(X_0, X_1, \dots, X_{n-1}, X_n) = (X_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}_0}$$
(1.2)

where

 $X_0 := \text{ initial state at time } 0$ 

 $X_1 :=$ state of process after time 1

:

 $X_n :=$ state of process after time n

and call  $(X_i)_{i\in\mathbb{N}_0}$  a Markov Chain if it satisfies the Markov Property.

## Markov Property

A stochastic process is a Markov Chain  $(X_i)_{i \in \mathcal{S}}$  if it satisfies

$$\mathbb{P}\left(X_{n+1} = x_{n+1} \mid \bigcap_{i=0}^{n} \{X_i = x_i\}\right) = \mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = x_{n+1} \mid X_n = x_n)$$

known as the Markov Property. In words,

Past and future are conditionally independent given the present.

So given the present value  $X_n = x_n$ , the past values  $X_0, \ldots, X_{n-1}$  become irrelevant for predicting values of  $X_{n+1}$ .

## 1.2 Specifying Joint Probabilities

To specify a stochastic process, you must describe the joint distribution of its variables. For example, we know for R.V.s  $X_0, X_1, X_2 \in \mathbb{N}_0$ 

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 \le 3, X_1 \le 5, X_0 \le 7) = \sum_{x=0}^{3} \sum_{y=0}^{5} \sum_{z=0}^{7} p(x, y, z)$$

So to specify the joint distribution of the three variables  $X_0, X_1, X_2$  it is enough to specify their joint probability function p(x, y, z). This must be some non-negative

1.3 Transition Mechanism 3

function which sums to 1 over all triples (x, y, z). Now for any sequence of three R.V.s

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x, X_1 = y, X_2 = z) = \\ \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x)\mathbb{P}(X_1 = y \mid X_0 = x)\mathbb{P}(X_2 = z \mid X_1 = y, X_0 = x)$$

For a Markov Chain, this reduces to

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x, X_1 = y, X_2 = z) = \\ \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x)\mathbb{P}(X_1 = y \mid X_0 = x)\mathbb{P}(X_2 = z \mid X_1 = y)$$

Now transition matrices  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  can be defined by

$$P(X_1 = y | X_0 = x) = P_1(x, y)$$

$$P(X_2 = z | X_1 = y) = P_2(y, z)$$

Then

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x, X_1 = y, X_2 = z) = \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x)P_1(x, y)P_2(y, z) \tag{1.3}$$

Most commonly we assume that the chain has homogeneous transition probabilities. That means  $P_1 = P_2 = P$  for a single transition matrix P. We deal with this idea formally in the next section,

#### 1.3 Transition Mechanism

For finite S, we can build a transition matrix

$$P = P(x, y) \tag{1.4}$$

a "set of rules" or "mechanism" for moving between different states in S. Rules of probability imply that (1.4) is a *stochastic matrix*.

#### **Stochastic Matrix**

A stochastic matrix is a non-negative matrix with all row sums equal to 1. With the usual convention of x indexing rows and y indexing columns, we say P is stochastic if it satisfies

$$P(x,y) \ge 0$$
 and  $\sum_{y} P(x,y) = 1$ 

It should make intuitive sense that for a fixed row, summing its elements yields one. Given the present state x, you're bound to go somewhere.

For now, our Markov chains will possess homogeneous transition probabilities. All that means is we use the same matrix P at each step in time. To make this more

concrete, observe for a Markov Chain

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x_0, X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2, X_3 = x_3)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x_0) P_1(x_0, x_1) P_2(x_1, x_2) P_3(x_2, x_3)$$

and by time homogeneity  $P_1, P_2, P_3 = P$  and we have

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x_0, X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2, X_3 = x_3)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x_0) P(x_0, x_1) P(x_1, x_2) P(x_2, x_3)$$

## 1.3.1 Absorbing States

When P(x, x) = 1, we say that x is an absorbing state. If you start in an absorbing state, you are sure to be there next step, and there again after two steps, and so on. Put another way, once you arrive at an absorbing state, you never leave it.

# 1.4 Constructing the Joint Distribution

To get the chain going, we initialize the process with an assigned initial distribution  $\lambda$  for  $X_0$ . That is

$$\mathbb{P}(X_0 = x_0) = \lambda(x_0)$$

Again, rules of probability require  $\lambda$  is a probability distribution on the state space.

$$\lambda(x_0) \ge 0$$
 and  $\sum_{x_0} \lambda(x_0) = 1$ 

We finally have everything we need to completely specify the joint distribution of a Markov chain with homogeneous transition probabilities.

#### Prescription for the Joint Distribution

Let the Markov chain  $(X_i)_{i\in\mathcal{S}}$  have a finite state space  $\mathcal{S}$ , assigned initial distribution  $\lambda$ , and transition probability matrix P. Then for sequences of length n+1, the joint distribution

$$(X_0 = x_0, X_1 = x_1, \dots, X_{n-1} = x_{n-1}, X_n = x_n)$$

has the following prescription

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\bigcap_{i=0}^{n} \{X_i = x_i\}\right) = \lambda(x_0) \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} P(x_i, x_{i+1})$$
 (1.5)

This construction is a proper assignment of a joint distribution, according to the rules of probability. One can check this by verifying 1) all the joint probabilities are

non-negative (which is trivial) and 2) all the probabilities sum to one, that is

$$\sum_{x_0} \sum_{x_1} \cdots \sum_{x_{n-1}} \sum_{x_n} \lambda(x_0) \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} P(x_i, x_{i+1}) = 1$$
 (1.6)

which one can show using mathematical induction on n. e.g. assuming it is true for n-1 instead of n, in going from n-1 to n there is just one more summation, which simplifies as it should using row sums of the transition matrix equal 1.

#### 1.4.1 Notation

 $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  is used to show that  $\mathbb{P}$  makes  $X_0$  have distribution  $\lambda$ .

 $\mathbb{P}_x$  is used to show that  $\mathbb{P}$  makes  $X_0 = x$ , i.e.  $\lambda(x) = 1$  and  $\lambda(x_0) = 0$  for  $x_0 \neq x$ . So under  $\mathbb{P}_x$  the chain starts in state x.

# 1.5 Simulating a Markov Chain

We can simulate a Markov chain  $(X_i)_{i\in\mathbb{N}}$ , with a supply of uniform R.V.s

$$U_0, U_1, \ldots \sim \mathsf{Uniform}(0,1)$$

For the initial state  $X_0$  to have distribution  $\lambda$ , that is  $X_0 \sim \lambda$ , let

$$X_{0} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } 0 \leq U_{0} < \lambda(0) \\ 1, & \text{if } \lambda(0) \leq U_{0} < \lambda(0) + \lambda(1) ] \\ 2, & \text{if } \lambda(0) + \lambda(1) \leq U_{0} < \lambda(0) + \lambda(1) + \lambda(2) ] \\ & \vdots \end{cases}$$

Now, if  $X_0 = x_0$ , define

$$X_{1} = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } 0 \leq U_{1} < P(x_{0}, 0) \\ 1, & \text{if } P(x_{0}, 0) \leq U_{1} < P(x_{0}, 0) + P(x_{0}, 1) ] \\ 2, & \text{if } P(x_{0}, 0) + P(x_{0}, 1) \leq U_{1} < P(x_{0}, 0) + P(x_{0}, 1) + P(x_{0}, 2) ] \\ & \vdots \end{cases}$$

and so on. Hence, given  $X_0 = x_0$  and  $X_1 = x_0$ , we create intervals using the elements  $P(x_1, \cdot)$ . It is easy to implement this simulation using a language like R, Python, etc.

Often the row  $P(x, \cdot)$  is a standard distribution, e.g. uniform or binomial or Poisson or geometric with parameters depending on x. Then there are built in packages for generating such variables which can be used instead of the crudest scheme indicated above.

6 1.6 Gambler's Ruin Chain

## 1.6 Gambler's Ruin Chain

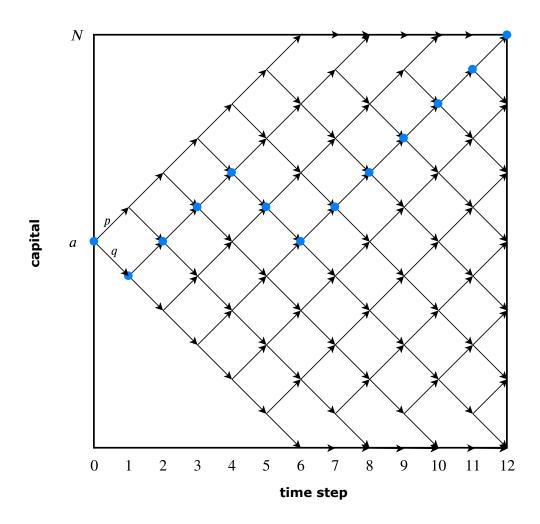
A gambler has a fortune of \$a, where  $0 \le a \le N$ . At each play the gambler wins a \$1 with probability p and loses \$1 with probability q = 1 - p. The gambler plays until  $X_n = N$  (quitting with a gain) or until  $X_n = 0$  (ruined). Here

 $X_n :=$  the gambler's capital after n plays

The transition probabilities for the edge cases are

$$P(0,0) = 1$$
 and  $P(N,N) = 1$ 

So states 0 and N are absorbing. Reference. [?] Durrett's, Essentials of Stochastic Processes Section 1.1. Here's a depiction of the gambler's chain.



# LECTURE 2

# **Transition Mechanism**

Pitman reminds us that Wikipedia serves as a valuable resource for clarifying most basic definitions in this course.

Recall from Lecture 1 we worked with a transition matrix P with rows x and columns y. The xth row and yth column entry is P(x,y). All entries are non-negative. All row sums are 1.

For the first step in the Markov chain, we have:

$$P(x,y) = \mathbb{P}(X_1 = y | X_0 = x).$$

With many steps, and homogeneous transition probabilities, also

$$P(x,y) = \mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = y \,|\, X_n = x).$$

Pitman notes that the first problem on homework 1 is very instructional, which gets us to think about what exactly is the Markov property.

#### 2.1 Action of a Transition Matrix on a Row Vector

Take an initial distribution  $\lambda(x) = \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x)$ . If we write  $P(x, \cdot)$ , we're taking the row of numbers in the matrix. With N states we can simply consider sequences of length N rather than N-dimensional space. To ensure we really know what's going on here, consider 2 steps (indexed 0 and 1). What is the distribution of  $X_0$ ? Trivially, it's  $\lambda$ . Now what is the distribution of  $X_1$ ? We need to do a little more. We don't know how we started, and we want to think of all the ways we could have ended up at our final state  $X_1$ .

To do this, we use the **law of total probability**, which gives:

$$P(X_1 = y) = \sum_{x \in S} P(X_0 = x, X_1 = y).$$

Now it just takes a little bit of calculation to go forward. Conditioning on  $X_0$  (turning a joint probability into a marginal for the first and a conditional given the

first) gives:

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = y) = \sum_{x \in S} \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x, X_1 = y)$$

$$= \sum_{x \in S} \mathbb{P}(X_0 = x) \cdot \mathbb{P}(X_1 = y \mid X_0 = x)$$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = y) = \sum_{x \in S} \lambda(x) \underbrace{P(x, y)}_{\text{matrix entry}}$$

$$= (\lambda P)(y) \text{ or equivalently, } = (\lambda P)_y$$

To have this fit with matrix multiplication, we must take  $\lambda(x)$  to be a ROW VECTOR. Back in our picture going from one step to the next of a Markov chain, we use x the (nth state) to index the row of the matrix and y (the n + 1th state) to index the column of the matrix P(x, y).

#### 2.1.1 Conclusion

There is a happy coincidence between the rules of probability and the rules of matrices, which implies that if a Markov Chain has  $X_0 \sim \lambda$  (meaning random variable  $X_0$  has distribution  $\lambda$ ), then at the next step we have the following distribution

$$re X_1 \sim \lambda P$$

where argument y is hidden. If you evaluate the row vector  $\lambda P$  at entry y, you get  $(\lambda P)_y = \mathbb{P}(X_1 = y)$ . Although this may not be terribly exciting, Pitman notes this is fundamental and important to understand the connection between linear algebra and rules of matrices with probability. We will maintain and strengthen this connection throughout the course.

#### 2.2 Action of a Transition Matrix on a Column Vector

Suppose f is a function on S. Think of it as a **reward** in that if  $X_1 = x$ , then you get f(x) (random monetary reward  $f(X_1)$  where  $X_1 \in S$  as an abstract object; these can be partitions or permutations or something very abstract, not necessarily numerical). Pitman notes some applications of Markov chains to Google's PageRank with a very big state space of web pages. Without being scared about the potential size of the **state space**, we open to some abstraction in our immediate example. Consider the Markov chain step from  $X_0$  to  $X_1$  and the conditional expectation:

$$\mathbb{E}[f(X_1) | X_0 = x] = \sum_{y} \underbrace{P(x, y)}_{\text{matrix}} \underbrace{f(y)}_{\text{col,vec.}}$$

where we could make some concrete financial definitions to apply our abstract problem if we wish. 2.3 Two Steps 9

Starting at state x, we move to the next state according to the row  $P(x,\cdot)$ . Recognize this as a matrix operation and we have, for the above:

$$\mathbb{E}\left(f(X_1) \mid X_0 = x\right) = (Pf)(x)$$

**Remark:** The function or column vector f can be signed (there is no difficulty if we are losing money as opposed to gaining); it is more difficult to interpret the action on a signed row vector  $\lambda$ . But easy to interpret  $\lambda P$  for a probability measure  $\lambda$ .

## 2.3 Two Steps

Now consider two steps in time

$$X_0 \xrightarrow{P} X_1 \xrightarrow{Q} X_2$$

Assume the Markov property. Now let's discuss the probability of  $X_2$ , knowing  $X_0 = x$ . That is,

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = z \,|\, X_0 = x)$$

where we have some mystery intermediate  $X_1$ . The row out of the matrix which we use for the intermediate is random.

We condition upon what we don't know in order to reach a solution. It should become instinctive to us soon to do such a thing: condition on  $X_1$ . This gives

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = z \mid X_0 = x) = \sum_{y} \mathbb{P}(X_1 = y, X_2 = z \mid X_0 = x)$$
$$= \sum_{y} P(x, y)Q(y, z)$$

where in the homogeneous case, P = Q; however, here we prefer the more clear notation as above. Pitman jokes that generations of mathematicians developed a surprisingly compact form for this, which is matrix multiplication. If P, Q are matrices, this is simply:

$$\sum_{y} P(x,y)Q(y,z) = PQ(x,z)$$

where we take the x, zth element of the resulting matrix PQ.

#### 2.3.1 Review: Matrix Multiplication

Assuming P, Q, R are  $S \times S$  matrices, where S is the label set of indices, then Pitman notes that indeed,

$$PQR := (PQ)R = P(QR)$$

via the associativity of matrix multiplication. This is true for all finite matrices. As a side comment, this is also true for infinite matrices, provided they are nonnegative  $\geq 0$  (of course, if we have signed things, then summing infinite arrays in different

orders may cause issues). For our purposes, all our entries are nonnegative, so we have no issues.

Now, recall that typically, matrix multiplication is not commutative; that is,

$$PQ \neq QP$$

However, one easy (and highly relevant) case:

If our chain has homogeneous transition probabilities: P, P, P, P. If Pitman asks us what is the probability that  $X_n = z$  if we knew  $X_0 = x$ , then we iterate what we found for 2 steps

$$\mathbb{P}(X_n = z \mid X_0 = x) = \underbrace{PPP \cdots P}_{n \text{ times}}(x, z) =: \boxed{P^n(x, z)}$$

Again, Pitman notes we have a very happy 'coincidink' (coincidence): If we take an n-step transition matrix (TM) of a markov chain (MC) with homogeneous probabilities P, this is equivalent to simply  $P^n$ , the nth power of matrix P. We can bash this out with computers, but Pitman notes there are techniques of diagonalizing and spectral theory to perform high powers of matrices. Realize that every technique here has an **immediate application** to Markov chains (with very many steps). Note the *Chapman-Kolmogorov equations* 

$$P^{m+n} = P^m P^n = P^n P^m$$

So powers of a single matrix do commute. These equations are easily justified either by algebra, or by probabilistic reasoning. See text Section 1.2 for details of the probabilistic reasoning.

# **2.4** Techniques for Finding $P^n$ for some P

Pitman wants to warn us that these ideas will be coming and eventually will be useful for this course. Especially, we consider matrices P related to sums of independent random variables. The most basic example is a **Random Walk** on  $\mathbb{N}_0 := \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ .

In this problem one usually writes  $S_n$  for the state instead of  $X_n$ . Our basic X has  $X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots$  i.i.d. according to some P. This is truly a trivial MC. All rows of P are equal to some  $p = (p_0, p_1, \ldots)$  We consider:

$$S_n = X_0 + X_1 + \cdots + X_n =$$
 cumulated winnings in a gambling game

(Ignore costs or losses for convenience, so natural state space of  $S_n$  is  $\mathbb{N}_0$ ).

#### 2.5 First Example

Let  $p \sim \text{Bernoulli}(p)$  where values 0, 1 have probabilities q, p, respectively. Then  $S_n := X_0 + X_1 + \cdots + X_n$ .

This admits the following (infinite) matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} * & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & \cdots \\ 0 & q & p & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 1 & 0 & q & p & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & q & p & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & q & p & 0 & \cdots \\ 4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & q & p & \cdots \\ 5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & q & \cdots \\ \vdots & & & & & & \end{bmatrix}$$

Because we can only win \$1 at a time, we fill in the first row trivially. Pitman asks us now to write down a formula for  $P^n$ . As a hint, he says to start with the top row.

$$P^n(0,k) = \mathbb{P}(\underbrace{X_1 + \dots + X_n}_{n \text{ iid } \mathbf{Bernoulli}(()p)} = k)$$

If this doesn't come quickly to us (the answer is trivial according to Pitman), then we should re-visit our 134 probability text (which for me happens to be by Pitman). To find  $P^n$ , we note n=1 is known, so taking n=2 for a state space of  $X_0, X_1, X_2$  gives the probabilities:

$$P^{2}(0,0) = q^{2}$$
  
 $P^{2}(0,2) = p^{2}$   
 $P^{2}(0,1) = 2pq$ 

and this is the familiar binomial distribution. Our formula is:

$$P^{n}(0,k) = \mathbb{P}(\underbrace{X_{1} + \dots + X_{n}}_{n \text{ iid } bern(p)} = k)$$
$$= \binom{n}{k} p^{k} q^{n-k}.$$

Now being at an initial fortune i, we have:

$$P^{n}(i,k) = \binom{n}{k-i} p^{k-i} q^{n-(k-i)}.$$

# 2.6 Second Example: More Challenging

Now consider the same problem, same setup, but now with  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  are i.i.d. with the distribution  $(p_0, p_1, p_2, \ldots)$  (perhaps all strictly positive) instead of  $(q, p, 0, 0, 0, \ldots)$ . We are interested in the distribution of our Markov Chain after n steps. Taking the same method, it's enough to discuss the distribution of  $S_n = X_1 + \cdots + X_n$ , because we just shift by i to  $S_0 = i$ .

Our matrix is now:

$$\begin{bmatrix} * & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & \cdots \\ 0 & p_0 & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 1 & 0 & p_0 & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & p_0 & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots & \cdots \\ 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & p_0 & p_1 & p_2 & \cdots \\ 4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & p_0 & p_1 & \cdots \\ 5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & p_0 & \cdots \\ \vdots & & & & & & & \end{bmatrix}$$

Again, to get closer to induction, we take n = 1 to n = 2 steps (with  $S_0 = 0$ ). In matrix notation, we have:

$$\mathbb{P}_0(S_2 = k) = \sum_{j=0}^k P(0, j)P(j, k),$$

where we stop at k because we are only adding nonnegative variables. And in probability notation, where we start with j and need to get to k (so we move k-j) we have:

$$\mathbb{P}_0(S_2 = k) = \sum_{j=0}^k \mathbb{P}(X = j)\mathbb{P}(X = k - j),$$

and either way (of the above two), this ends up being equal to:

$$\mathbb{P}_0(S_2 = k) = \sum_{j=0}^k P_j P_{k-j}.$$

So in conclusion, we have found

$$P^{2}(0,k) = \sum_{j=0}^{k} P_{j} P_{k-j}$$

where we want to know the name of this operation: **discrete convolution** (so that we know what to look up!). This gets us from a distribution of random variables to the distribution of their sum. There is a "brilliant idea" (as given by Pitman) Consider the power series (of the generating function)  $G(z) := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n z^n$ , where taking

$$(p_0 + p_1 z + p_2 z^2 + \cdots) (p_0 + p_1 z + p_2 z^2 + \cdots)$$

yields that  $\sum_{j=0}^{k} P_j P_{k-j}$  is simply the coefficient of a particular term. Pitman gives us a slick notation:

$$P^{2}(0,k) = \sum_{j=0}^{k} P_{j} P_{k-j}$$
$$= \left[z^{k}\right] \underbrace{\left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_{n} z^{n}\right)^{2}}_{n},$$

which is just the coefficient of  $z^k$  in the under-braced expression. Repeating this convolution, we move forward from n=2, by induction on n if you want to be careful:

$$P^n(0,k) = [z^k][G(z)]^n$$

**Example:** Pitman asks us to evaluate via Wolfram Alpha dice rolls  $(p_0, p_1, ...) = \left(\frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{6}, ..., \frac{1}{6}, 0, ...\right)$  and want to find:  $P^4(0,5)$  for dice rolls =  $\mathbb{P}(S_4 = 5)$ .

$$\left[\frac{1}{6}(z+z^2+z^3+z^4+z^5+z^6)\right]^4 = \frac{1}{6^4}(z^{24}+4z^{23}+10z^{22}+20z^{21} +35z^{20}+56z^{19}+80z^{18} +104z^{17}+125z^{16}+140z^{15} +146z^{14}+140z^{13}+125z^{12} +104z^{11}+80z^{10}+56z^9+35z^8 +20z^7+10z^6+4z^5+z^4)$$

which implies

$$P^4(0,5) = \frac{4}{6^4}$$

where we took the coefficient of the under-braced term (power of 5). Pitman credits the invento of this method, Laplace. This is unusually simple but demonstrates the general method. Of course,  $P^4(0,5) = \frac{4}{6^4}$  is rather trivial because you can count the number of dice patterns on one hand. But the evaluations of  $P^4(0,k)$  for all  $4 \le k \le 24$  above are not so trivial. This method can be used to prove all the familiar properties of sums of independent discrete variables, e.g. sums of Poissons are Poisson. You should try it for that purpose.

# LECTURE 3

# Hitting Times, Strong Markov Property, and State Classification

# 3.1 Hitting Times

This discussion follows quite closely §1.3 of the text. See text for further developments and details. Consider a Markov Chain with fixed transition matrix P and state space S. Consider states  $x, y \in S^{-1}$ . We are interested in the first hitting time or first passage time

$$T_B := \min\{n \ge 1 : X_n \in B\}$$

for some target set of states B. In words, the first time at or after time 1 that the chain hits the set of states B. An immediate pedantic issue with is what if the chain never reaches B, that is  $X_n \notin B \ \forall n$ ? In this case, we need to make the following (very useful) convention

$$\min\{\varnothing\} = \inf\{\varnothing\} := \infty$$

where  $\infty$  is a conventional element assumed to be greater than every positive integer.

### Strong Markov Property (SMP)

Start with  $X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots$  which is a Markov chain with transition matrix P, and any initial distribution for  $X_0$ . Conditionally given  $T_B = n < \infty$  and  $X_n = y \in B$ , the following process

$$(X_n, X_{n+1}, X_{n+1}, \dots)$$

is a copy of the original Markov Chain with transition matrix P conditioned to start in state y.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>sometimes  $i, j \in \mathcal{S}$ 

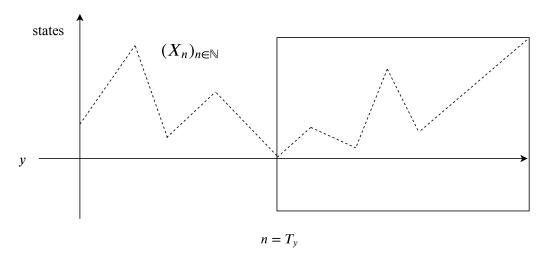
16 3.2 Iterating

In particular, the distribution of  $X_{n+1} \mid X_n = y$  is  $P(y, \cdot)$ , that is, for any state z

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{n+1}=z\,|\,T_y=n,X_n=y)=P(y,z), \text{ also}$$
 
$$\mathbb{P}(X_{n+1}=z,X_{n+2}=w\,|\,T_y=n,X_n=y)=P(y,z)P(z,w)$$

and so on, an infinite list of equations.

Proof. See Durett page 14.



**Remark:** In discrete time (even with a general state space), all Markov chains with a homogeneous transition mechanism have the Strong Markov Property. Now, we can use the SMP to discover and prove things about Markov chains.

#### 3.2 Iterating

From  $T_y^0 = 0$ , for  $k \ge 1$ 

$$T_y^k := \min\{n > T_y^{k-1} : X_n = y\}.$$

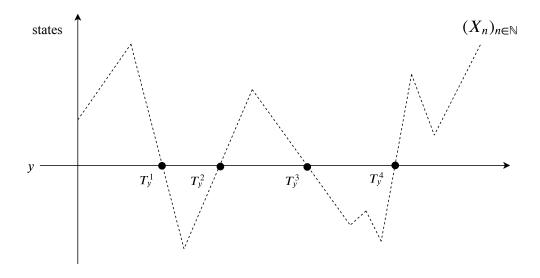
Note  $T_y^k$  is a  $k^{\text{th}}$  iterate of the scheme for defining  $T_y = T_y^1$ , not the  $k^{\text{th}}$  power of  $T_y$ . Suppose we have a path that hits the state y a finite number of times  $n \geq 1$ , say exactly four times:  $T_y, T_y^2, T_y^3, T_y^4$ . Then by our convention, we say that  $T_y^5 = \infty$ . Consider the random variable which is the total number of hits of y, at any time  $n \geq 1$ , deliberately not counting a hit at time 0 if  $X_0 = y$ :

$$N_y := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y).$$

The possible values of  $N_y$  are  $\{0, 1, 2, ..., \infty\}$ , an infinite time horizon. By the logic of the definitions, there is the identity of events:

$$(N_u = 0) = (T_u = \infty).$$

3.2 Iterating



As another example, consider  $(N_y \ge 1)$ , the complement of  $(N_y = 0)$  because we include  $\infty$  as a part of  $(N_y \ge 1)$ . Hence

$$(N_y \ge 1) = (T_y < \infty).$$

Recall  $N_y := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y)$  is simply counting the number of hits on y. Pitman asks the audience to find expressions in terms of  $T_y^k$  for the left hand side of

$$\begin{split} &(N_y \ge 3) = (T_y^3 < \infty) \\ &(N_y = 3) = (T_y^3 < \infty, T_y^4 = \infty) \\ &(N_y \ge k) = (T_y^k < \infty) \\ &(N_y = k) = (T_y^k < \infty, T_y^{k+1} = \infty). \end{split}$$

Now let's discuss the probabilities. The SMP gives

$$\mathbb{P}_y(T_y^k < \infty) = \rho_y^k,$$

where k on the RHS is a power, and k on the LHS is an index. Now taking k = 1, we have the definition of  $\rho_y$ :

$$\mathbb{P}_y(T_y < \infty) = \rho_y$$

called the first return probability of state y. Now how to get from  $\rho_y$  to  $\rho_y^2$ ? Basically, this is by the SMP. Observe

$$(T_y^k < \infty) = (N_y \ge k).$$

which tells us that the probability of hitting y at least  $k \in \mathbb{N}_0$  times is

$$\mathbb{P}_y(N_y \ge k) = \rho_y^k$$

18 3.3 State Classification

If we want to find the point probability that  $N_y = k$ , we take

$$\mathbb{P}_y(N_y = k) = \mathbb{P}_y(N_y \ge k) - \mathbb{P}_y(N_y \ge k + 1)$$
$$= \rho_y^k - \rho_y^{k+1}$$
$$= \boxed{\rho_y^k(1 - \rho_y)}$$

Now either  $\rho_y = 1$  and this probability is 0 for all  $k < \infty$ , pushing all the probability to  $\mathbb{P}_y(N_y = \infty) = 1$ , or  $\rho_y < 1$  in which case the probability distribution (starting at y) of  $N_y := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y)$  is geometric(p) on  $\{0, 1, 2, ...\}$  with parameter

$$p = 1 - \rho_y = \mathbb{P}_y(T_y = \infty) = \mathbb{P}_y(N_y = 0).$$

Notice, via the tail-sum formula for  $\mathbb E$  of a non-negative integer valued random variable

$$\mathbb{E}_{y} N_{y} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{y} (N_{y} \ge k) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \rho_{y}^{k} = \frac{\rho_{y}}{1 - \rho_{y}} = \frac{q}{p}$$

for  $q = \rho_y$  and  $p = 1 - \rho_y$ , in agreement with the standard formula for  $\mathbb{E}$  of a geometric(p) variable.

#### 3.3 State Classification

There are two cases to consider.

(1) y is transient:  $0 \le \rho_y < 1$ . This implies that our expected number of visits is:

$$\mathbb{E}_y N_y = \frac{\rho_y}{1 - \rho_y} < \infty$$

which implies

$$\mathbb{P}_y(N_y < \infty) = 1,$$

which says that if we have a transient state, then we only return to y a finite number of times. In other words, after some point, the Markov chain never visits y again.

(2) y is recurrent:  $\rho_y = 1$ . In other words,  $\mathbb{P}_y(N_y = \infty) = 1$  in that given any number of hits, we are sure to hit y again.

## 3.3.1 Constructing $\rho_u$

Here is an explicit a formula:

$$\rho_y = \mathbb{P}_y(T_y = 1) + \mathbb{P}_y(T_y = 2) + \mathbb{P}_y(T_y = 3) + \cdots$$

$$= P(y, y) + \sum_{y_1 \neq y} P(y, y_1) P(y_1, y) + \sum_{y_1 \neq y} \sum_{y_2 \neq y} P(y, y_1) P(y_1, y_2) P(y_2, y) + \cdots$$

3.4 Lemma 1.3 19

But this is not so nice to work with.

**Exercise:** Show that for  $n \geq 2$  the *n*th term  $\mathbb{P}_y(T_y = n)$  can be expressed in matrix notation as  $P(y, \cdot)K^{n-2}P(\cdot, y)$  for a suitable matrix K to be determined. Note that K is *sub-stochastic* with non-negative entries and row sums  $\leq 1$ .

#### 3.4 Lemma 1.3

Reference. Durrett's, Essentials of Stochastic Processes Page 16. Take B to be a set of states. Hypothesis: Suppose the probability starting at x that  $T_B \leq k$  is at least  $\alpha > 0$  for some fixed k and all x:

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_B \leq k) \geq \alpha > 0$$
 for all states x

Then

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk) \leq (1 - \alpha)^n$$

As an example where the hypothesis is obviously satisfied, consider the Gambler's Ruin chain with state 0 and N as absorbing states. That is,  $B = \{0, N\}$ , with P(i, i + 1) = p and P(i, i - 1) = q for 0 < i < N. Then this condition holds with k = N and

$$\alpha = p^N + q^N > 0$$

because no matter where you start away from the boundary states, a sequence of either at most N consecutive up steps or N consecutive down steps will get you to the boundary.

*Proof.* The conclusion is obvious by taking complements if n=1:  $\mathbb{P}_x(T_B>k) \le 1-\alpha$  for all x. Now by induction on n. Observe that

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_B > (n+1)k) = \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk \text{ and after time } nk \text{ before time } (n+1)k \text{ still don't hit } B)$$

$$= \sum_{y \notin B} \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk, X_{nk} = y, \text{ do not hit } B \text{ before time } (n+1)k)$$

$$= \sum_{y \notin B} \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk, X_{nk} = y) \mathbb{P}_y(T_B > k)$$

$$\leq \sum_{y \notin B} \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk, X_{nk} = y) (1 - \alpha)$$

$$= \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk) (1 - \alpha)$$

$$\leq (1 - \alpha)^n (1 - \alpha) = (1 - \alpha)^{n+1}.$$

**20** 3.4 Lemma 1.3

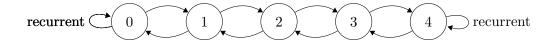
Pitman mentions Kai Lai Chung of Stanford who presents this Lemma in terms of a pedestrian repeatedly crossing the road. Depending on visibility and weather conditions, (current state), there is a varying chance of making it to the other side in k steps. But suppose that no matter how favorable the visibility and weather conditions, there is always at least a small chance  $\alpha$  that the pedestrian gets killed while crossing the road. Then, if the pedestrian repeatedly attempts to cross the road, eventually they will get killed, with a geometric bound as above on how long that takes. In the language of Markov chains, if there is always at least a some strictly postive chance of the chain reaching a boundary B in the next k steps, no matter where it starts, eventually the chain will hit such a boundary set. Observe that in standard real numbers,

$$0 \le \mathbb{P}_x(T_B = \infty) \le \mathbb{P}_x(T_B > nk) \le (1 - \alpha)^n, \ \forall_n$$

implies

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_B = \infty) = 0$$

Back to Gambler's Ruin. Suppose  $0 . In the language of transient and recurrent states, every state <math>x \notin \{0, N\}$  is transient! Moreover,  $x \in \{0, N\}$  is recurrent. Here's a Gambler's Ruin chain for N = 4.



#### Irreducible Matrix

We say that a matrix P is **irreducible** if

$$\forall x, y \in \mathcal{S}, \exists n : P^n(x, y) > 0$$

In words, for every pair of states x, y, it is possible to get from x to y in some number n of steps. Here n = n(x, y) is a function of x, y. If matrix P is irreducible, then either

all states are recurrent or all states are transient

We then say the matrix P is "recurrent" or "transient", meaning that it drives a chain all of whose states are recurrent or transient, as the case may be.

This and other properties of states of a chain with irreducible transition matrix P, which hold for one state iff they hold for all states, are called *solidarity properties*. Other examples are the conditions that  $\mathbb{E}_x T_x < \infty$ , and that state x is aperiodic as discussed in the text, or that state x has a particular period d.

3.4 Lemma 1.3 21

Easy fact. (Pigeon hole principle: with a finite state space, and infinitely many steps, some state must be hit infinitely often): Suppose S is finite and P is irreducible. Then P is recurrent. Notice the Gambler's Ruin chain exhibits a matrix that is **not** irreducible, which can be seen via the definition above and the requirement that there exists some n where  $P^n(x,y) > 0$ .

# LECTURE 4

# **Exchangeability, Stationary Distributions, and Two State Markov Chains**

# 4.1 Sampling without Replacement

Consider  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$  an exhaustive random sample without replacement from a box of N = A + B tickets, with A labeled 1 (success) and B labeled 0 (fail). Let  $S_0 := 0$  and  $S_n := X_1 + \cdots + X_n$  the number of 1s and  $\bar{S}_n := n - S_n$  the number 0s in the first n places of the sample. Then  $((\bar{S}_n, S_n), 0 \le n \le N)$  is a Markov chain with transition matrix

$$P((f,s),(f+1,s)) = \frac{B-f}{A+B-f-s}$$
(4.1)

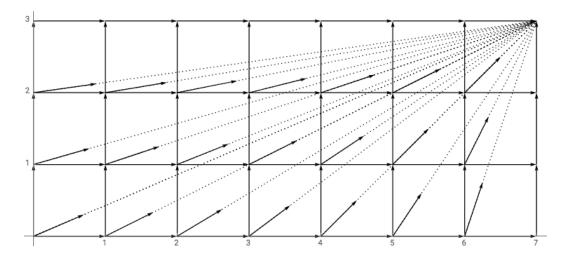
$$P((f,s),(f,s+1)) = \frac{A-s}{A+B-f-s}$$
 (4.2)

and all other entries 0. In the following diagrams, with Cartesian coordinates (f, s), the the horizontal scale counts the number of failures f, the vertical scale counts the number successes s, and the sum of coordinates is the number of draws n = f + s. The chain  $W_n := (\bar{S}_n, S_n)$  starts at the origin  $(\bar{S}_0, S_0) = (0, 0)$  at time n = 0, and terminates at (B, A) at time n = N = A + B.

- each step right in this chain increments the first component f of (f, s) to f + 1 for a failure (0) in the sequence  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$ .
- each step up in this chain increments of the second component s of (f, s) to s + 1 for a success (1) in the sequence  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$ .

Altogether there are N=A+B steps, with A steps up and B steps right. All  $\binom{A+B}{A}$  possible paths of the chain are equally likely.

Figure 4.1: Transition probabilities for sampling without replacement. Here A=3, B=7. The only possible transitions are one step up or one step right, following arrows on the grid of possible states (f,s), with  $0 \le f \le 7$  the number of failures (0) and  $0 \le s \le 3$  the number of successes, after f+s draws without replacement from 7 values 0 and 3 values 1. The pair of transition probabilities out of each state (f,s) is represented by a vector with tail (f,s) and head (f+q,s+p) for q=P((f,s),(f+1,s)) and p=P((f,s),(f,s+1)) as above. The head of each vector is the conditional mean of the random vector  $(\bar{S}_{n+1},bS_{n+1})$  given  $(\bar{S}_n=f,S_n=s)$  with n=f+s. All the transition vectors point towards the terminal state of the chain at (B,A)=(7,3) after n=10 draws.



# 4.2 Exchangeability and Reversibility

It is an important general property of a sample without replacement  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$  that these random variables are *exchangeable*, meaning that for every permutation  $\sigma$  of  $[N] := \{1, \ldots, N\}$ 

$$(X_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, X_{\sigma(N)}) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_1, \dots, X_N)$$

$$(4.3)$$

where  $\stackrel{d}{=}$  denotes equality in distribution. [?] See Pitman Probability Section 3.6. In particular, this holds for the sample  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$  of A ones and B zeros considered here. Except in degenerate cases, the sequence  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$  is not Markov: given  $X_1, \ldots, X_n$  the conditional probability that  $X_{n+1} = 1$  is  $(A - S_n)/(N - n)$  which is typically not just a function of  $X_n$ , but involves all of the previous values  $X_1, \ldots, X_n$  through their sum  $S_n$ , the number of 1s in the first n draws without replacement. However, in the model of sampling without replacement from A values 1 and B values 0, it is instructive to study the common joint distribution of every pair of draws

$$(X_{\sigma(1)}, X_{\sigma(2)}) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_1, X_2) \qquad (\sigma(1) \neq \sigma(2)).$$
 (4.4)

The joint probability function of this pair of draws is obtained by assuming that all (A+B)(A+B-1) possible pairs of different tickets are equally likely to appear on

the first and second draws. By counting pairs of different tickets

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 0) = \frac{B(B-1)}{(A+B)(A+B-1)} \tag{4.5}$$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 1) = \frac{A(A-1)}{(A+B)(A+B-1)} \tag{4.6}$$

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 1) = \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 0) = \frac{AB}{(A+B)(A+B-1)}$$
(4.7)

The last equality of the two off-diagonal probabilities is important. In counting pairs of different tickets, this comes from BA = AB: the number of different ways to get 1 followed by 0 from the first two draws is equal to the number of different ways to get 0 followed by 1. In probabilistic terms, the equality (4.7) of off-diagonal probabilities gives the equality in distribution

$$(X_2, X_1) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_1, X_2)$$
 (4.8)

Such a pair of random variables  $(X_1, X_2)$  is called either reversible or exchangeable. In terms of a joint distribution table of numerical random variables  $X_1$  and  $X_2$ , displayed in Cartesian coordinates with values of  $X_1$  horizontal and values of  $X_2$  vertical, such a distribution is symmetric with respect to reflection across the set of diagonal values  $(X_1 = X_2)$ :

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = x, X_1 = y) = \mathbb{P}(X_1 = x, X_2 = y) \tag{4.9}$$

for all possible values x and y. If x = y this identity is trivial. If  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  have only two possible values 0 and 1, there are only two possible off-diagonal pairs (0,1) and (1,0). So for indicator variables,  $(X_1, X_2)$  is reversible iff (4.9) holds for the single pair (x,y) = (0,1), as it does in (4.7).

In general, for  $N \geq 2$ , a sequence of random variables  $(X_1, \ldots, X_N)$  is called *reversible* if (4.3) holds just for the single permutation  $\sigma$  which reverses the order of indices, that is

$$(X_N, \dots, X_1) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_1, \dots, X_N).$$
 (4.10)

For a random vector of length N=2, reversible is the same as exchangeable, because there are only two permutations of  $\{1,2\}$ , the identity permutation, for which there is nothing to check, and the permutation which switches 1 and 2. For a random vector of length  $N \geq 3$  exchangeable implies reversible, but not conversely. For instance, if N=3 there are 3!-1=5 permutations besides the identity, and reversibility only involves an identity in distribution for just one of these 5 permutations. See also further discussion below.

In sampling without replacement from B values 0 and A values 1, the first variable  $X_1$  has distribution  $\mathbb{P}(X_1 = i) = \pi_i$  given by

$$(\pi_0, \pi_1) = \frac{(B, A)}{A + B} \tag{4.11}$$

and the step from  $X_1$  to  $X_2$  is made according to the transition probability matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} P_{00} & P_{01} \\ P_{10} & P_{11} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{A+B-1} \begin{bmatrix} B-1 & A \\ B & A-1 \end{bmatrix}$$
(4.12)

This description of the joint distribution of  $(X_1, X_2)$  is logically equivalent to the previous description of the joint probability function (4.5)-(4.7) by four applications of the product rule  $\mathbb{P}(CD) = \mathbb{P}(C)\mathbb{P}(D \mid C)$ . Either description implies  $(X_1, X_2) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_2, X_1)$  and hence  $X_2 \stackrel{d}{=} X_1$ . More algebraically, the distribution of  $X_2$  is determined by

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = 1) = \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 0, X_2 = 1) + \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 1, X_2 = 1) 
= \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 0)\mathbb{P}(X_2 = 1 | X_1 = 0) + \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 1)\mathbb{P}(X_2 = 1 | X_1 = 1) 
= \frac{B}{(A+B)} \frac{A}{(A+B-1)} + \frac{A}{(A+B)} \frac{(A-1)}{(A+B-1)} 
= \frac{A(A+B-1)}{(A+B)(A+B-1)} = \frac{A}{A+B}$$

The probability  $\mathbb{P}(X_2 = 0)$  can be found similarly, or by

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = 0) = 1 - \mathbb{P}(X_1 = 1)$$

since the only possible values of  $X_2$  are 0 and 1. The simple algebraic structure of this joint distribution of the pair of indicator variables  $(X_1, X_2)$  derived from sampling without replacement from A values 1 and B values 0 is worth understanding thoroughly, especially the reversibility  $(X_1, X_2) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_2, X_1)$  which implies  $X_2 \stackrel{d}{=} X_1$ . The algebraic structure of this joint distribution of dependent indicators  $(X_1, X_2)$ , with two parameters A and B, in terms of which the algebra comes out very nicely, turns out to be shared by every pair of exchangeable indicator variables  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  which are not independent.

Remark. There is a simple construction of dependent indicator variables  $(X_1, X_2)$  with various levels of dependence, which may be helpful. Draw a Venn diagram with two regions  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ , each of area p, for some fixed  $0 . Let <math>X_i$  be the indicator of  $V_i$ . Now move the regions around in the diagram to vary their overlap. There is no loss of generality in making each region a rectangle of height 1 over some base interval of length p. Now each  $V_i$  may be identified with a subinterval of [0,1] of length p, and it is just a matter of moving around two subintervals of [0,1], each of length p, and considering the possible length of overlap of these two intervals  $V_i$ . You can treat each  $X_i$  as a function  $X_i(\omega)$  of  $\omega \in [0,1]$  with value  $X_i(\omega) = 1$  if  $\omega$  falls in some interval  $V_i$  of length p, and value 0 if  $\omega \notin V_i$ . So  $\mathbb{E}X_i = 1 \times p + 0 \times (1 - p) = p$ . The most the two intervals can overlap is if they are identical, which makes  $\mathbb{E}X_1X_2 = p$  and  $\mathbb{P}(X_1 = X_2) = 1$ , with correlation 1. By an elementary argument (Boole's inequality)

$$0 \le \mathbb{E}(1 - X_1)(1 - X_2) = 1 - 2p + \mathbb{E}(X_1 X_2)$$

the least they can overlap is if

$$\mathbb{P}(V_1 V_2) = \mathbb{E}(X_1 X_2) = (2p - 1)_+$$

which is 0 if  $0 \le p \le 1/2$ , and 2p-1 if  $1/2 . This bound is achieved by <math>V_1 = [0, p]$  and  $V_2 = [1-p, 1]$ . Any value of  $\mathbb{P}(V_1V_2)$  in this range  $[(2p-1)_+, p]$  determines a possible exchangeable joint distribution of  $(X_1, X_2)$  with  $\mathbb{E}X_1 = \mathbb{E}X_2 = p$ , which is realized on [0, 1] by any two intervals of length p with the assigned overlap. And for an allowed value of  $\mathbb{E}X_1X_2$ , Every exchangeable joint law of a pair of indicators  $(X_1, X_2)$  is completely determined by the common value of  $p := \mathbb{E}X_i$  and the value of  $\mathbb{E}X_1X_2$  in  $[(2p-1)_+, p]$ . Always included in the range of possible values of  $\mathbb{E}(X_1X_2)$  is the value  $p^2$  for independent  $X_i$ . Thus

$$(2p-1)_+ < p^2 < p \text{ for } 0 < p < 1$$

as you should check by sketching graphs of all three functions of p over [0,1]. Indicators  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are called *positively dependent* or *negatively dependent* according to the sign of  $Cov(X_1, X_2) := \mathbb{E}X_1X_2 - \mathbb{E}X_1\mathbb{E}X_2$ .

# 4.3 Stationary Distributions

For a pair of discrete random variables  $(X_1, X_2)$ , write either

$$X_1 \sim \pi \text{ and } (X_2 | X_1) \sim P(X_1, \cdot)$$

or

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 \in \cdot) = \pi(\cdot) \text{ and } \mathbb{P}(X_2 \in \cdot \mid X_1) = P(X_1, \cdot)$$

to mean that  $X_1$  has distribution  $\pi$ , and the conditional distribution of  $X_2$  given  $X_1 = x$  is given by the row  $P(x,\cdot)$  of some transition probability matrix P, for every possible value x of  $X_1$ . This prescription of a distribution  $\pi$  for  $X_1$  and the conditional distribution  $P(X_1,\cdot)$  for  $X_2$  given  $X_1$  uniquely determines the joint distribution of  $X_1$  and  $X_2$ , and is equivalent to the formula for the joint probability function of  $(X_1, X_2)$ 

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = x, X_2 = y) = \pi(x)P(x, y)$$

as x and y range over all possible values of  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  respectively. The distribution of  $X_2$  is then determined by the matrix operation  $X_2 \sim \pi P(\cdot)$ :

$$\mathbb{P}(X_2 = y) = \sum_x \mathbb{P}(X = x) \mathbb{P}(Y = y \mid X = x)$$
$$= \sum_x \lambda(x) P(x, y) = (\pi P)(y).$$

In particular, for  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  with the same set of possible values,

$$X_1 \stackrel{d}{=} X_2 \iff \pi = \pi P$$
 meaning (4.13)

$$\sum_{x} \pi(x)P(x,y) = \pi(y) \text{ for all states } y.$$
 (4.14)

Then  $\pi$  is called a stationary (or invariant or equilibrium or steady state) distribution for the transition matrix P. This condition  $X_1 \stackrel{d}{=} X_2$  is implied by the stronger reversibility condition

$$(X_1, X_2) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_2, X_1) \iff \pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)P(y, x) \text{ for all } x, y$$
 (4.15)

when  $\pi$  is called a reversible equilibrium distribution for the transition matrix P. The equations in (4.14) are called balance equations while those in (4.15) are called detailed balance equations. If there are |S| = N states, there are N different balance equations, and  $\binom{N}{2}$  different detailed balance equations. For a prescribed transition matrix P, to solve either system of equations to obtain a stationary probability distribution  $\pi$  you must add the constraint  $\sum_x \pi(x) = 1$ . Issues of existence and uniqueness of solutions of these balance equations are treated in the text and will be discussed further in following lectures. It is often easy to see directly that some distribution  $\pi$  provides a reversible equilibrium for a particular transition matrix P. This just involves checking  $\pi(x)P(x,y) = \pi(y)P(y,x)$  for  $x \neq y$ , which was already noticed above in the case of sampling without replacement, by counting outcomes. No summations were involved.

**Exercise:** The text on page 22 has a nice sand metaphor for the balance equations. Explain the meaning of detailed balance in terms of the sand metaphor. Here are some easy consequences of these definitions, all of which you should be able to derive for yourself without consulting any text::

• If  $(X_0, X_1, X_2, ..., )$  is a Markov chain with homogeneous transition matrix P and  $X_0 \sim \pi$  with  $\pi P = \pi$ , then for all positive integers n and N

$$(X_0,\ldots,X_N)\stackrel{d}{=}(X_n,\ldots,X_{n+N}).$$

A stochastic process  $(X_0, X_1, X_2, ...,)$  with this property is called *stationary*. In words: the finite dimensional distributions of a stationary process are invariant with respect to a shift in time.

- If a distribution  $\pi$  solves the detailed balance equations for P, then  $\pi$  also solves the balance equations for P;
- If  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are random variables, each with only two possible values, then  $X_1 \stackrel{d}{=} X_2$  iff  $(X_1, X_2) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_2, X_1)$ ;
- If  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  have three or more possible values, it is possible to have  $X_1 \stackrel{d}{=} X_2$  without  $(X_1, X_2) \stackrel{d}{=} (X_2, X_1)$ . An example on three states is  $(X_1, X_2)$  with transition matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

corresponding to deterministic rotation by one step around three states 0, 1, 2 arranged in a circle. The unique equilibrium distribution is the uniform distribution  $\pi = (1, 1, 1)/3$ , and this equilibrium is not reversible. This is an

example of a periodic chain with period 3. In general for transition matrix P, the period of a state x is the greatest common divisor d(x) of the set of positive integers n such that  $P^n(x,x) > 0$ . For an irreducible matrix P, Lemma 1.17 of the text shows that  $d(x) \equiv d$  for some positive integer d, called the period of P.

- The above transition matrix P on 3 states is doubly stochastic, meaning that all its row sums are 1 and all its column sums are 1. For an  $S \times S$  matrix P with S finite, the uniform distribution  $\pi$  on S is P-invariant iff P is doubly stochastic. (Text Theorem 1.14)
- If  $\pi$  is P-invariant, then  $\pi$  is  $P^n$ -invariant for every positive integer n. Here  $P^n$  is the nth iterate of the transition matrix P, which is the n-step transition matrix for a Markov chain with homogeneous transition matrix P.
- In terms of a Markov chain  $(X_0, X_1, ...)$  with  $X_0 \sim \pi$  and homogeneous transition matrix P, an equilibrium  $\pi$  for P is reversible iff for every  $N \geq 1$  there is the equality in distribution

$$(X_0,\ldots,X_N)\stackrel{d}{=}(X_N,\ldots,X_0).$$

See the text §1.4 and §1.5 for further discussion and many examples. Two less obvious but very important facts, treated in the text in §1.6, 1.7 and 1.8 are:

• if P is irreducible with a finite number of states, then there is a unique stationary distribution  $\pi$  for P, specifically

$$\pi_j = \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}_j T_j} \tag{4.16}$$

where  $\mathbb{E}_j T_j$  is the mean return time of state j. This is also true more generally if P is irreducible and positive recurrent, meaning that  $\mathbb{E}_j T_j < \infty$  for some (hence all ) states j,

• If P is irreducible and positive recurrent and aperiodic, meaning that some (and hence every) state x has period 1, then

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} P^n(i,j) = \pi_j \tag{4.17}$$

as above for all states j.

• Consequently, for any Markov chain  $(X_n)$  with countable state space S and such a transition matrix P, no matter what the distribution of  $X_0$ , there is the convergence in distribution  $X_n \stackrel{d}{\to} \pi$  as  $n \to \infty$ , meaning

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(X_n = j) = \pi_j \qquad (j \in S).$$

**Exercise.** Explain exactly how each of these results can be deduced from specific theorems in the text.

#### 4.4 Two State Transition Matrices

Suppose A and B are positive integers with  $A+B=N\geq 3$ , and consider  $(X_1,\ldots,X_N)$  an exhaustive sample without replacement from A values 1 and B values 0. In the sample  $(X_1,X_2,X_3)$  of size 3, every pair of variables has the reversible joint distribution of  $(X_1,X_2)$  displayed in (4.5) - (4.7).

**Exercise.** Check, by calculations like (4.5) - (4.7) that this sequence  $(X_1, X_2, X_3)$  of exchangeable indicators is not Markovian.

For P the transition matrix of  $(X_1, X_2)$  displayed in (4.12), with parameters (B, A), the iterates  $P^n$  of P have no obvious meaning in terms of the exhaustive sample  $(X_k, 1 \le k \le N)$ . In particular, the conditional distribution of  $X_3$  given  $X_1$  is provided by P, not by  $P^2$ , as you can see from the formula for  $P^2$  for a two state Markov matrix P (Homework 2). Rather, this example of  $(X_1, X_2, X_3)$  derived from sampling without replacement is non-Markovian and exchangeable. The single transition matrix P provides the conditional distribution of  $X_i$  given  $X_j$  for every  $i \ne j$ .

Observe that the matrix P defined by (4.12), with two parameters A and B, has row sums 1 not only for all positive integers A and B, but also for any choice of real parameters A and B with  $A + B - 1 \neq 0$ . In fact, this construction generates every  $2 \times 2$  transition matrix P except for the relatively uninteresting Bernoulli(p) matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} q & p \\ q & p \end{bmatrix} \qquad (0 \le p \le 1, p+q=1).$$

For p = A/(A+B) the matrix above is associated with sampling without replacement from a population of A ones and B zeros. For general  $0 \le p \le 1$ , the Bernouli(p) matrix corresponds to an unlimited sequence of independent Bernoulli(p) trials. You can easily check the following proposition:

**Proposition 0.1.** Let P be a  $2 \times 2$  transition matrix with  $P_{01} \neq P_{11}$ . Then P is of the algebraic form (4.12), that is

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_{00} & P_{01} \\ P_{10} & P_{11} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{A+B-1} \begin{bmatrix} B-1 & A \\ B & A-1 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (4.18)

for a unique pair of real parameters (B, A):

$$\begin{bmatrix} B-1 & A \\ B & A-1 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{P_{01} - P_{11}} \begin{bmatrix} P_{00} & P_{01} \\ P_{10} & P_{11} \end{bmatrix}$$
(4.19)

Assume further that  $P_{01} + P_{10} > 0$ , to exclude the trivial case  $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  corresponding to (B, A) = (0, 0). Then the unique stationary distribution for P is  $\pi = (\pi_0, \pi_1)$  defined by

$$(\pi_0, \pi_1) = \frac{(P_{10}, P_{01})}{P_{10} + P_{01}} = \frac{(B, A)}{A + B}; \tag{4.20}$$

This  $\pi$  is a reversible equilibrium for P: if  $X_1 \sim \pi$  then the joint distribution of  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  is given by the formulas (4.5)–(4.7) for sampling without replacement, without the requirement that A and B are positive integers. This makes

$$Cov(X_1, X_2) := \mathbb{E}X_1 X_2 - (\mathbb{E}X_1)(\mathbb{E}X_2) = \frac{-AB}{(A+B)^2(A+B-1)}.$$
 (4.21)

The range of parameters (A, B) in this construction has two connected components:

- $A \ge 1$  and  $B \ge 1$ , when  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are negatively dependent;
- $A = -a \le 0$  and  $B = -b \le 0$ , with a + b > 0, when  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are positively dependent; then in terms of  $a = -A \ge 0$  and  $b = -B \ge 0$

$$\begin{bmatrix} P_{00} & P_{01} \\ P_{10} & P_{11} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{a+b+1} \begin{bmatrix} b+1 & a \\ b & a+1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The transition matrix (4.4) of independent Bernoulli(p) trials is recovered as the limit case when either A and B both tend to  $+\infty$ , or A and B both tend to  $-\infty$ , with  $A/(A+B) \to p$ .

**Exercise.** Check that the formula (4.20) for the stationary distribution  $\pi$  of a two state chain agrees with the general formula  $\pi_i = 1/\mathbb{E}_i T_i$  in (4.16), by directly evaluating  $\mathbb{E}_i T_i = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_i(T_i \geq n)$  for the two state chain.

#### 4.5 Two State Transition Diagrams

To fully understand the dependence between the variables  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  in a two-state Markov chain, and how this affects the distribution of  $X_1 + X_2$ , regard each  $X_i$  as the indicator of success on trial i in a pair of dependent trials. Let  $S_2 := X_1 + X_2$  be the number of successes in the two trials, and

$$\bar{S}_2 := (1 - X_1) + (1 - X_2) = 2 - S_2$$

the number of failures in the two trials. With  $(S_0, \bar{S}_0) := (0, 0)$  and  $(S_1, \bar{S}_1) := (X_1, 1 - X_1)$ , the pair of dependent indicators  $(X_1, X_2)$  is now encoded in the sequence

$$W_0 := (\bar{S}_0, S_0); \qquad W_1 := (\bar{S}_1, S_1); \qquad W_2 := (\bar{S}_2, S_2).$$

So  $(W_0, W_1, W_2)$  is a Markov chain with 6 states:

- (0,0) is the initial state of  $W_0 = (\bar{S}_0, S_0)$ ,
- (0,1) and (1,0) are the two possible states of  $W_1 = (1-X_1, X_1)$ , corresponding to  $(X_1 = 1)$  and  $(X_1 = 0)$  respectively
- (0,2) and (1,1) and (2,0) are the three possible states of  $W_2 = (S_2, S_2)$ , corresponding to the events

$$(W_2 = (0,2)) = (S_2 = 2) = (X_1 = 1, X_2 = 1)$$
  
 $(W_2 = (1,1)) = (S_2 = 1) = (X_1 = 0, X_2 = 1) \cup (X_1 = 1, X_2 = 0)$   
 $(W_2 = (2,0)) = (S_2 = 0) = (X_1 = 0, X_2 = 0).$ 

There are two motivations for this proliferation of states:

- the distribution of  $S_2 = X_1 + X_2$ , the number of successes in the two dependent trials, is naturally of interest; this is encoded in the distribution of  $W_2$ .
- each of the  $2 \times 2 = 4$  possible values of  $(X_1, X_2)$  corresponds to two consecutive transitions of the chain  $(W_0, W_1, W_2)$ ; vectors representing probabilities of these transitions are easily displayed graphically, as in Figure 4.1 for the cumulative counts in sampling without replacement.

For the transition matrix P as in (4.12) derived from  $(X_1, X_2)$  a sample of size 2 without replacement from A values 1 and B values 0, the transition diagram of  $(\bar{S}_n, S_n)$  for  $0 \le n \le 2$  is just the bottom left corner of the larger diagram already displayed in Figure 4.1 for A = 3 and B = 7, involving just the first two steps away from (0,0). See Figure 4.2. The special feature of this transition diagram, that lines through the various probability vectors all pass through the point (B,A), is essentially an algebraic property of the transition rules for sampling without replacement. Remarkably, this algebraic property extends to the the setting of the above proposition, as follows:

Corollary 0.1. Let a  $2 \times 2$  transition probability matrix P with  $P_{01} \neq P_{11}$  be represented in the form (4.18) for a pair of real parameters (B,A). Consider a Cartesian plane of pairs of real numbers w = (f,s), with the six pairs indexed by non-negative integers f and s with  $f+s \leq 2$  representing possible states of the chain  $W_i := (\bar{S}_i, S_i)$  for  $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ , derived as above from a pair of indicator variables  $(X_1, X_2)$  with transition matrix (4.18). For each of the states w = (0,0) or (0,1) or (1,0) represent the two transition probabilities of the W-chain out of state w by a vector pointing from w to w + v(w), where v(w) is the following probability vector:

$$v(0,0) = \lambda(\cdot) = (\lambda_0, \lambda_1)$$
 is the distribution of  $X_1$  (4.22)

$$v(0,1) = P(1,\cdot) = (P_{10}, P_{11})$$
 is the distribution of  $X_2$  given  $X_1 = 1$  (4.23)

$$v(1,0) = P(0,\cdot) = (P_{00}, P_{01})$$
 is the distribution of  $X_2$  given  $X_1 = 0$ . (4.24)

Regard these three probability vectors, together with the probability vector  $\lambda P$  representing the unconditional distribution of  $X_2$ , and the vector with components (B, A), as five points in the (f, s)-plane. Then:

- (i) (B, A) is the unique point of intersection of the lines through w and w + v(w) for w = (0, 1) and w = (1, 0).
- (ii) For each initial distribution  $\lambda$  of  $X_1$ , the line through  $\lambda$  in direction  $\lambda P$  passes through (B, S).
- (iii) The point

$$\lambda + P\lambda = \mathbb{E}(\bar{S}_2, S_2) \tag{4.25}$$

is the point of intersection of the upsloping line through  $\lambda$  and (B, A) and the downsloping line  $\{(f, s) : f + s = 2\}$ .

(iv) For  $(B, A) \neq (0, 0)$ , the unique stationary distribution  $\pi$  for P is the point  $(\pi_0, \pi_1) = (B, A)/(A + B)$  where the line from (0, 0) to (B, S) intersects the line  $\{(f, s) : f + s = 1\}$ .

*Proof.* Part ((i)) is implied by the cases  $\lambda = (0,1)$  and  $\lambda = (1,0)$  of part ((ii)), and parts ((iii)) and ((iv)) also follow easily from part ((ii)). So it suffices to check part ((ii)). By the assumption that  $\lambda$  is a probability vector,  $\lambda_0 + \lambda_1 = 1$ . So the representation (4.18) of P in terms of A and B makes

$$(\lambda P)_1 = \frac{\lambda_0 A + \lambda_1 (A - 1)}{A + B - 1} = \frac{A - \lambda_1}{A + B - 1}$$
(4.26)

$$(\lambda P)_0 = \frac{\lambda_0(B-1) + \lambda_1 B}{A+B-1} = \frac{B-\lambda_0}{A+B-1}$$
 (4.27)

In Cartesian coordinates (f, s) with horizontal coordinate f counting failures, that is values  $X_i = 0$ , and vertical coordinate s counting successes, that is values  $X_i = 1$ , the slope of the probability vector representing the distribution  $\lambda P$  of  $X_2$  is therefore

$$\frac{(\lambda P)_1}{(\lambda P)_0} = \frac{A - \lambda_1}{B - \lambda_0}$$

which is the slope of the line through the points  $\lambda = (\lambda_0, \lambda_1)$  and (B, A).

**Remarks.** Parts ((i)) and ((iv)) of the above corollary were pointed out by Bruno de Finetti in his study of exchangeable sequences of random variables. I do not know a reference for parts ((ii)) and ((iii)). It is a curious feature of this geometric construction of the vector  $\lambda P(\cdot)$  from vectors representing  $P(0,\cdot)$  and  $P(1,\cdot)$ , that the basic decomposition  $\lambda P(\cdot) = \lambda_0 P(0,\cdot) + \lambda_1 P(1,\cdot)$  is not very apparent from the geometry. This makes it hard to give a comparably simple construction of the two inverse probability vectors  $\mathbb{P}(X_1 \in \cdot | X_2 = j)$  for j = 0, 1 which are given by Bayes' rule:

$$\mathbb{P}(X_1 = i \mid X_2 = j) = \frac{\lambda_i P(i, j)}{(\lambda P)_j}.$$
(4.28)

**Exercise.** Show that if the probability vectors  $P(0,\cdot)$  and  $P(1,\cdot)$  are both drawn emanating from (0,0) (rather than from (1,0) and (0,1) as in Figure 4.3), so the tips of both  $P(0,\cdot)$  and  $P(1,\cdot)$  fall on the downsloping line  $\{(f,s):f+s=1\}$ , then  $\lambda P(\cdot)$  is the vector emanating from (0,0) whose tip is on the same downsloping line, a fraction  $\lambda_1$  of the way along the directed line segment from  $P(0,\cdot)$  to  $P(1,\cdot)$ . Embellish this diagram by making  $\lambda P(\cdot)$  the top right corner of a parallelogram with two sides which are initial segments of the vectors  $P(0,\cdot)$  and  $P(1,\cdot)$ . Each of the four terms  $\lambda_i P(i,j)$  should now be apparent as a length on or other of the two axes.

**Problem.** How best to visualize Bayes' rule geometrically?



Figure 4.2: Transition vector diagram for a sample of size 2 without replacement.

This diagram just amplifies the bottom left corner of the transition diagram of Figure 4.1 for sampling without replacement. The chain  $(W_0, W_1, W_2)$  makes 2 steps through 6 states (f, s) for non-negative counts f and s of failures and successes with  $f + s \leq 2$ , driven by  $(X_1, X_2)$  a sample of size 2 without replacement from 3 ones (successes) and 7 zeros (failures). Starting from  $W_0 = (0, 0)$  the first transition is to  $W_1 = (0, 1)$  (up) or  $W_1 = (1, 0)$  (right) according to whether  $X_1 = 1$  or 0. The next step to  $W_2 = (X_1 + X_2, 1 - X_1 + 1 - X_2)$  is up or right according to whether  $X_2 = 1$  or 0. After these two steps,  $W_2$  is in one the states (0, 2), (1, 1) or (2, 0).

The transition probability vector

- out of (0,0) gives the stationary distribution (7/10,3/10) for  $X_1$ .
- out of (0,1) gives the distribution  $(P_{10},P_{11})=(7/9,2/9)$  of  $X_2$  given  $X_1=1$ .
- out of (1,0) gives the distribution  $(P_{00}, P_{01}) = (6/9, 3/9)$  of  $X_2$  given  $X_1 = 0$ .

The distribution of  $X_2$ , which is identical to the distribution of  $X_1$ , is represented by copy of the vector for the stationary distribution of  $X_1$ , added to the tip of that vector. Observe that all the probability vectors point towards the point (B, A) =(7,3), representing the total numbers of failures and successes if the process of sampling without replacement is continued to an exhaustive sample of size 10.

Figure 4.3: Transition vector diagrams for two-state Markov chains.

The left hand diagram shows the (f, s)-Cartesian plane for an indicator chain with  $P_{01} = 3/8$  and  $P_{11} = 1/8$  corresponding to (B, A) = (7, 3)/2. The geometric structure is very similar to that of Figure 4.2 for  $(X_1, X_2)$  a sample of size 2 without replacement from a population of 7 zeros and 3 ones. Now B and A are no longer integers, but the algebraic prescription of transition probabilities (4.18) still defines a  $2 \times 2$  transition probability matrix. Here

- the transition vector out of  $(1,0) \longleftrightarrow (X_1=0)$  adds  $P(0,\cdot)=(5,3)/8$
- the transition vector out of  $(0,1) \longleftrightarrow (X_1=1)$  adds  $P(1,\cdot)=(7,1)/8$ .

In accordance with Corollary 0.1, these transition vectors point to (B,A)=(7,3)/2. The diagram shows the 11 initial probability vectors  $\lambda=(i,10-i)/10$  for  $0\leq i\leq 10$ , emanating from the origin. Added to the tip of each of these vectors  $\lambda$  is the corresponding probability vector  $\lambda P$ , which always points from  $\lambda$  to (B,A). The stationary probability vector is  $\pi=(7,3)/10$ , the unique vector such that both  $\lambda$  and  $\lambda P$  point directly to (B,A)=(7,3)/2. The right hand diagram is the corresponding geometric description of the two state indicator chain with  $P_{01}=1/8$  and  $P_{11}=3/8$  corresponding to (B,A)=(-5,-1)/2. This diagram for positively dependent  $(X_1,X_2)$ , except that each vector  $\lambda P$  added to  $\lambda$  points away from (B,A) instead of towards (B,A). Now the stationary probability vector is  $\pi=(B,A)/(A+B)=(5,1)/6$ , which does not equal any of the displayed initial probability vectors  $\lambda=(\lambda_0,\lambda_1)$ , with  $\lambda_1$  ranging over a multiples of 1/10 as in the left hand diagram.

# LECTURE 5

# Recurrence Classes, x-Blocks, and Limit Theorem

## 5.1 Key Points for Homework

Pitman gives a few key pointers (which are from the textbook) that may help with finishing the homework due tonight.

• Recall the definition of an *irreducible* chain. That is,

$$\forall x, y \in \mathcal{S}, \ \exists n : P^n(x, y) > 0$$

This forbids a random walk on a graph with 2 or more components (closed classes). Most of the chains we commonly deal with (and in our homework) are irreducible.

• Fact: (See Theorem 1.7 in Durett). If P is irreducible and if there is a stationary probability vector  $\pi$  for P (that is, we can solve  $\pi P = \pi$  where  $\sum_x \pi(x) = 1, \pi(x) \geq 0$ ), then all the states are positive recurrent, i.e. the chain is positive recurrent.

#### 5.2 Positive and Null Recurrence

#### **Positive Recurrence**

We say that an irreducible chain (or transition matrix) is *positive recurrent* when, for some or for all x

$$\mathbb{E}_x T_x < \infty$$

Note that

$$\mathbb{E}_x T_x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_x (T_x \ge n).$$

You should check that if  $\mathbb{E}_x T_x < \infty$  for some x and P is irreducible, then

$$\mathbb{E}_x T_x < \infty, \quad \forall x \in \mathcal{S}$$

This is closely related to the formula  $\pi(x) = 1/\mathbb{E}_x T_x$ 

#### **Null Recurrence**

If a state is recurrent, but not positive recurrent (i.e.  $\mathbb{P}_x(T_x < \infty) = 1$ , but  $\mathbb{E}_x T_x = \infty$ ), then we say that x is null recurrent.

#### 5.3 Review: Mean Return Time

Pitman reminds us that there is a formula relating the mean return time and the stationary probability (Theorem 1.21 Durett):

$$\pi(x) = \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}_x T_x}$$

As a simple corollary, this formula directly implies that  $\pi$  is unique. There is no doubt about this for a stationary measure in terms of the mean recurrence time. If we discuss a system of countably infinite space, our traditional linear algebra may fail. This result provides an interpretation beyond a system of finitely many equations and unknowns.

Conversely, if P is irreducible and positive recurrent, then there exists this  $\pi$ . This is almost trivial, but of course we have to check that  $\pi$  is a stationary probability.

#### 5.4 Example: Symmetric Random Walk

Consider a simple (symmetric) random walk with equal probability of going either direction on  $\mathbb{Z} = \{\ldots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \ldots\}$ . We take the usual notation  $S_n$  for the walk. Start at x = 0, so that

$$S_n := \Delta_1 + \Delta_2 + \dots + \Delta_n$$

where  $\Delta_k$  is +1 or -1, each with probability  $\frac{1}{2}$ . This gives

$$P^n(0,0) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{, if } n \text{ is odd} \\ \binom{2m}{m} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2m} & \text{, if } n = 2m \text{ is even} \end{cases}$$

Now Pitman notes we can tell recurrence or transience by looking at the fact that the total number of visits to 0 follows a geometric distribution with parameter  $(1 - \rho_0)$ 

$$\mathbb{E}_0(\text{total } \# \text{ visits to } 0) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} P^n(0,0)$$

But we know that  $\binom{2m}{m}(\frac{1}{2})^{2m}$  is the same as the probability of m heads and m tails in 2m tosses. Increasing tosses gives a very "flat" normal curve because the mean of  $\mathbb{E}_0 S_{2m} = 0$  and the variance tends to infinity, because the variance of each summed term is 1, the mean square is

$$\mathbb{E}_0 S_{2m}^2 = \underbrace{1 + 1 + \dots + 1}_{2m} = 2m$$

We call this *diffusion*, in that on average the center of our distribution goes no where, but the distribution spreads out and flattens. Using Stirling's formula<sup>1</sup>

$$n! \sim \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^n \sqrt{2\pi n}$$

and applying this to our earlier expression to show that

$$P^{2m}(0,0) \sim \frac{C}{\sqrt{m}}$$

where C is some constant and  $\sim$  means the ratio tends to 1 as  $n \to \infty$ .

#### 5.4.1 Recurrence versus Transience

To see recurrence versus transience, we look at (from earlier)

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} P^{n}(0,0) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} P^{2m}(0,0) \sim \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{C}{\sqrt{m}} = \infty$$

(A rather paradoxical fact) This implies that the expected return time to 0 is infinite

$$\mathbb{E}_0 T_0 = \infty$$

although we are sure to eventually return with probability 1. Recall the definition of recurrent gives

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_x < \infty) = 1 \iff \mathbb{P}_x(T_x > n) \to 0$$
, as  $n \to \infty$ .

Also, we should know that positive recurrence implies recurrence, but the converse is not necessarily true. Pitman summarizes that on our homework, we can quote the result: If we have a stationary probability measure, then the chain is *positive* recurrent.

#### 5.5 Notion of x-Blocks of a Markov chain

Start at x (for simplicity) or wait until we hit x. Then look at the successive return times  $T_x^{(i)}$  which is the i<sup>th</sup> copy of  $T_x$ . Now recall this has the Strong Markov Property, which gives us two things:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>or Normal Approximation

- (i) Every  $T_x^{(i)}$  has the same distribution as  $T_x$ .
- (ii) Further, they are independent copies. That is,  $T_x^{(1)}, T_x^{(2)}, \ldots$  are independent.

Now Pitman mentions a variation on this theme of x-blocks, which explains many things.

#### 5.5.1 Example: x-Blocks

Let  $N_{xy}^{(i)} := \text{the } \# \text{ of visits to } y \text{ in the } i^{\text{th}} x\text{-block of length } T_x$ . In our previous in-class example, this gives a sequence

$$2, 0, 6, 0, 4, 2, \dots$$

Now for some book keeping, consider what happens if we sum over all states y. Of course, this just gives the length of  $T_x^{(i)}$  by "Accounting 101."

$$\sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}} N_{xy}^{(i)} = T_x^{(i)}$$

Note we must agree that  $N_{xx}^{(i)} = 1$  for this to work. Now this implies that there is a formula involving expectations. Taking expectation starting at x

$$\sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}} \mathbb{E}_x N_{xy}^{(i)} = \mathbb{E}_x T_x^{(i)}$$

where this is really the same equation for all i by the Strong Markov Property. Fix x, y and look at  $N_{xy}^{(1)}, N_{xy}^{(2)}, \ldots$ , each of which

- (i)  $N_{xy}^{(i)}$  has the same distribution as  $N_{xy} := N_{xy}^{(1)}$ .
- (ii) Further, the  $N_{xy}^{(i)}$  are independent and identically distributed.

Pitman reminds us that as we return to x, via the Strong Markov Property, nothing of the past changes our expectations or distributions going forward.

# 5.6 Positive Recurrent Chains (P irreducible)

Notice that if  $\mathbb{E}_x T_x < \infty$ , and we define  $N_{xy}$  as we have earlier, then we can let

$$\mu(x,y) := \mathbb{E}_x(N_{xy})$$

$$\mu(x) := \mathbb{E}_x T_x = \text{ mean length of } x\text{-block}$$

Correspondingly to our Accounting 101, we write

$$\sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}} \mu(x, y) = \mu(x) < \infty$$

Further, we can show (see text for details) that if we sum

$$\sum_{y} \mu(x, y) P(y, z) = \mu(x, z)$$

or in other words,  $\mu(x, \cdot)$  is a stationary measure, **not** a stationary probability, as it is an unnormalized measure). That is

$$\mu(x, \cdot)P = \mu(x, \cdot)$$

This is important because it gives us a simple explicit construction of a stationary measure  $\mu(x,\cdot)$  for every state x in state space  $\mathcal{S}$  of a positive recurrent (PR) irreducible chain with matrix P. Notice that this is not just any measure. By convention, we say that the number of times we visit x in the duration of  $T_x$  is 1 (this is necessary to satisfy our constructions today). That is, we must not count a visit twice, and we must set

$$\mu(x,x) := 1$$

in order to get

$$\sum_{y \in \mathcal{S}} \mu(x, y) = \mu(x) < \infty$$

Now to get a stationary probability measure, we take

$$\pi(y) = \frac{\mu(x,y)}{\sum_z \mu(x,z)} = \frac{\mu(x,y)}{\mu(x)}$$

and this does **not** depend on x. We can take any reference state and we get the same thing when we look at these ratios.

#### 5.6.1 Explanation of the Key Formula

We may ask why we have

$$\sum_{y} \mu(x, y) P(y, z) = \mu(x, z)$$

Recall that  $\mu(x,y)$  is the expected number of hits on y before  $T_x$ . That is,

$$\mu(x,y) = \mathbb{E}_x(\# \text{ of hits on } y \text{ before } T_x)$$

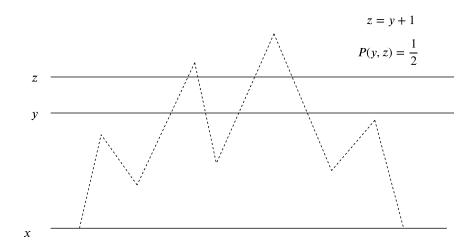
Now, every time we hit y, then P(y, z) is the probability that the next step is to state z. Therefore, at least intuitively,  $\mu(x, y)P(y, z)$  has a particular meaning. That is

$$\mu(x,y)P(y,z) = \mathbb{E}_x(\# \text{ of transitions } y \to z \text{ before } (\leq)T_x)$$

The distribution of a single x-block gives the following formulas for the invariant probability measure  $\pi$ 

$$\pi(x) = \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}_x T_x}, \quad \frac{\pi(y)}{\pi(x)} = \mu(x, y)$$

42 5.8 Limit Theorem



#### 5.7 Limit Theorem

If we let  $N_n(y) := \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{1}(X_k = y) = \#$  of hits on y in first n steps, then

$$\mathbb{E}_x \frac{N_n(y)}{n} = \text{ mean } \# \text{ hits on } y \text{ per unit time up to } n$$
 
$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n P^k(x,y) \to \pi(y)$$

We have this Cesáro mean convergence always for irreducible positive recurrent chains, these themselves do not necessarily converge, but their average converges. Now if we additionally impose *aperiodicity*, we have

$$P^n(x,y) \to \pi(y)$$

always for irreducible and positive recurrent and aperiodic transition matrix P. See §1.8 in the text for the proof.

#### 5.8 Review and Audience Questions

A null recurrent chain has a stationary measure with reference state x assigned as measure 1. If we do this on a simple symmetric random walk, we find that the expected time spent in every state on an x-block is 1, which explains why we expect to spend so much time to return back to x. If we have a stationary probability measure

$$\mathbb{E}_{\pi} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} P^{k}(x, y) = \pi(y)$$

we can argue that the stationary measure must be approached in the limit (at least in the Césaro sense) and is therefore unique as the limit must be unique.

# LECTURE 6

# First Step Analysis and Harmonic Equations

Pitman opens to questions regarding irreducible, aperiodic, recurrent (both positive and null), or transient. For a nice transition probability matrix, there exists a stationary probability  $\pi$  so that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} P^n = \begin{pmatrix} \pi \\ \pi \\ \vdots \\ \pi \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.1}$$

Pitman asks us to recall the single most important formula regarding recurrent chain and its expected time for returning to x starting from x,  $\mathbb{E}_x T_x$ . For a nice (irreducible, positive recurrent),

$$\mathbb{E}_x T_x = \frac{1}{\pi(x)} \tag{6.2}$$

where  $\pi(x)$  is the long run average (fraction of) time spent in state x. Recall that we defined that we hit x exactly once per x-cycle on average, which is equal to once per  $\mathbb{E}$  cycle. This makes sense intuitively, where expecting to take a long time before returning to state x corresponds to not being in state x as often.

## 6.1 Hitting Places

Recall that we used the notation

$$T_A := \min\{n \ge 1 : X_n \in A\}$$
  
$$T_x := \min\{n \ge 1 : X_n = x\}$$

This is not trivial for X with  $X_0 = x$ . For analysis of hitting places (and time), it's often easier to have our discrete-time sequence start at 0. Hence we define

$$V_A := \min\{n \ge 0 : X_n \in A\} \tag{6.3}$$

44 6.2 Hitting Places

Pitman notes that this is not a universal notation and we might see  $T, V, \tau$  used for this definition, but for this text and course, we will use  $V_A$  for this purpose.

## Thoerem 1.28 (Durett p. 55)

Consider a Markov chain with state space S. Take two non empty, (necessarily disjoint)  $A, B \subseteq S$ . Let  $C := S - (A \cup B)$  and assume C is finite

**Assumptions** Suppose we have  $h: S \to \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$h(a) = 1, \ \forall a \in A \tag{6.4}$$

$$h(b) = 0, \ \forall b \in B \tag{6.5}$$

$$h(x) = \sum_{y} P(x, y)h(y), \ \forall x \in C$$
 (6.6)

Suppose also that

$$\mathbb{P}_x(V_{A\cup B}<\infty)>0, \ \forall x\in C$$

Then

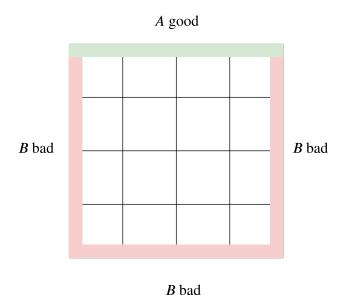
$$h(x) = \mathbb{P}_x(V_A < V_B) \tag{6.7}$$

The point of the theorem is that for a typical Markov chain X, and disjoint sets of states A and B, the chance that X hits A before B can be found, as a function of the initial state x, by solving the system of linear equations (6.6) subject to the obvious boundary conditions (6.4) and (6.5). Very commonly, we'll write the equation (6.6) in matrix notation, where h is a column vector as h(x) = (Ph)(x) for  $x \in C$ . It is very convenient to assume (with no loss of generality) that both A and B are absorbing sets of states. Then (6.6) reduces to simply h = Ph, an equality of row vectors indexed by  $x \in S$ . This is because h(x) = Ph(x) holds trivially for any absorbing state x (meaning P(x,x) = 1). Note that because C is assumed finite, a variant of Durrett's Lemma 1.3 shows that (6.1) is equivalent to

$$\mathbb{P}_x(V_{A \cup B} < \infty) = 1, \ \forall x \in C \tag{6.8}$$

For a chain with infinite state space S and C infinite, this condition is adequate as a replacement for (6.1), provided it is assumed that h is a bounded or non-negative function, so there are no problems with the definition of Ph.

Intuitively, regard A and B as sets of boundary states. Graphically, it is convenient to place A, the set of target states, at the top of a 2 (or higher dimensional) lattice, and place B as all three remaining boundaries of the lattice (left, right, bottom edges).



# 6.2 Method of Solution (Durret p.54)

Pitman notes that the method is more important than the solution here. From the text, "Let h(x) be the probability of hitting A before B, starting from X." We call this technique **first step analysis**. "By considering what happens at the first step." That is, we assert that we start at  $X_0 := x$ , and we condition on time  $X_1$ , the value of the chain at time 1. Generalizing, let Y be any nonnegative (for simplicity) random variable, which is a function of  $X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots$  some Markov chain with transition matrix P. Consider  $\mathbb{E}_x Y$  as a function of x, and notice we can write, by summing out all states  $z \in S$ , using  $\sum_{z \in S} \mathbb{1}(X_1 = z) = 1$ 

$$\mathbb{E}_x Y = \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{z \in S} \mathbb{1}(X_1 = z)Y$$

$$= \sum_z \mathbb{E}_x \big[ \mathbb{1}(X_1 = z)Y \big]$$

$$= \sum_z \mathbb{P}_x (X_1 = z) \mathbb{E}_x (Y \mid X_1 = z)$$

$$= \sum_z P(x, z) \mathbb{E}_x (Y \mid X_1 = z)$$

which is simply computing the  $\mathbb{P}_x$  expectation of Y by conditioning on  $X_1$  Commonly, Y can be written as a function of  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  and this can be further simplified. We can do this for instance when Y is the indicato  $Y = \mathbb{1}(V_A < V_B)$  in the setting of the above theorem. Then

$$\boxed{\mathbb{E}_x Y = \mathbb{P}_x (V_A < V_B)} \tag{6.9}$$

Something else is true as well via first step analysis. Take  $x \notin A \cup B$ . Look at the probability that  $V_A$  happens before  $V_B$ , provided that we know  $X_1 = z$ . Now if z is one of the boundary cases, this is trivial. So we treat in cases, using the Markov property

$$\mathbb{P}_{x}(V_{A} < V_{B} \mid X_{1} = z) = \begin{cases} 1 & , z \in A \\ 0 & , z \in B \\ \mathbb{P}_{z}(V_{A} < V_{B}) & , \text{else} \end{cases}$$

as you should convince yourself.

Does this probability of hitting A before B have anything to do with  $P(c, \cdot)$  for  $c \in A \cup B$ ?

We agree on the edge cases, for starting in A or B. Now we make this key observation, which is not mentioned in the text. Because of our definitions, namely the possibility of being there at time zero, the answer is NO!

With this in mind, we modify the problem at hand to make the entire set of states  $A \cup B$  absorbing. That is,  $P(c, c) := 1, \forall c \in A \cup B$ . That is to say when we arrive, we stick there, and we solve the problem under these circumstances. Notice that we agreed by conditioning on  $X_1$  that

$$h(x) := \mathbb{P}_x(V_A < V_B), \text{ for } x \notin A \cup B$$

solves the Harmonic equation

$$h(x) = \sum_{y} P(x, y)h(y)$$

$$(6.10)$$

Notice that if we make  $A \cup B$  absorbing, then this harmonic equation above is true for ALL  $x \in A \cup B$ . Now we arrive at a reformulation of the theorem.

#### Pitman's Version of Durett's Theorem

Assume that

- P has  $A \cup B$  as absorbing states and
- $\mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } A \cup B \text{ eventually}) = 1, \forall x \in S$

then

$$h(x) := \mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } A \text{ before } B)$$

is the *unique* bounded or non-negative solution of h = Ph, subject to the boundary condition that  $h = \mathbb{1}_A$  (the indicator of A) on  $A \cup B$ .

This is fundamentally the same as Durett's theorem, but with some tinkering, we have a more elegant statement as here. Notice that h = Ph is a very special equation,

whose as solutions solve various problems. In order to understand this equation, it is important to understand what is Pf for a function (column vector) f (assume either nonnegative or bounded so that we can make sense of the summations). Then the action of the transition matrix P on a column vector f gives us:

$$(Pf)(x) = \sum_{y \in S} P(x, y) f(y),$$

summing over all y in the state space. P(x,y) gives the probability distribution over values y, depending on the initial state x and f(y) simply gives the return from state y. Hence directly by our notation, we have:

$$(Pf)(x) = \mathbb{E}_x f(X_1).$$

Hence

$$(Ph)(x) = \mathbb{E}_x h(X_1)$$

as the meaning of (Ph)(x). Another way to say this is by looking at the conditional expectation (knowing  $X_0$ )

$$\mathbb{E}\big[h(X_1)\,|\,X_0\big] = \big(Ph\big)(X_0)$$

Pitman makes the following claim: If h = Ph (that is, h solves the harmonic equation), then the expectation (starting at x) of h of any variable  $(X_n)$  is

$$\mathbb{E}_x\big[h(X_n)\big] = h(x)$$

which is true by n = 1 by  $(Ph)(x) = \mathbb{E}_x h(X_1)$  from above (that is, h = Ph). Now, this is true for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$  by induction and the Markov property. If we trust this for now (we may revisit this later), we may want to assume that

$$h = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{on } A \\ 0, & \text{on } B, \end{cases}$$

then we can write

$$h(x) = \mathbb{E}_x h(X_n) = \sum_{y \in S} P^n(x, y) h(y),$$

as our familiar notation for a Markov chain. Then we can equivalently write this as a summation over the three state cases

$$h(x) = \sum_{y \in A} P^{n}(x, y)h(y) + \sum_{y \in B} P^{n}(x, y)h(y) + \sum_{y \in S-A-B} P^{n}(x, y)h(y)$$

Recall that we've set  $A \cup B$  to be absorbing, so the first two terms are simply

$$\sum_{y \in A} P^{n}(x, y)h(y) = \mathbb{P}(V_{A} \le n)$$
$$\sum_{y \in B} P^{n}(x, y)h(y) = 0$$

Hence

$$h(x) = \mathbb{P}_x(V_A \le n) + 0 + \sum_{y \in S - A - B} P^n(x, y)h(y)$$

Now if we take  $n \to \infty$ , then

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} h(x) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{E}_x h(X_n) = P_x(V_A < \infty) + \underbrace{\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{y \in S - A - B} P^n(x, y) h(y)}_{=0}$$
$$= \mathbb{P}_x(V_A < \infty)$$

because  $\mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit }A \cup B \text{ eventually}) = 1$  via our assumption, and the sum which tends to 0 is bounded above by the maximum absolute value of h(y) over  $y \in S - A - B$  times  $\mathbb{P}_x(V_{A \cup B} > n)$  which tends to 0 by the assumption that  $\mathbb{P}_x(V_{A \cup B} < \infty) = 1$ .

## 6.3 Canonical Example: Gambler's Ruin for a Fair Coin

The state space is  $S := \{0, 1, 2, ..., N\}$ , and the goal state is  $A = \{N\}$ , and the bad state is  $B = \{0\}$ . The transition matrix is then

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now let  $(X_n)$  be the simple random walk with absorbing states  $\{0, N\}$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}_r(\text{hit } N \text{ before } 0) = h(x)$$

is desired. The equation h = Ph becomes

$$h(x) = \frac{1}{2}h(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}h(x-1)$$
 for  $0 < x < N$ 

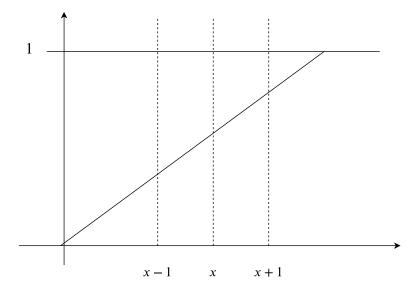
and we set the boundary conditions

$$h(N) := 1$$
  $h(0) := 0$ 

Now the harmonic equation  $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}h(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}h(x-1)$  says that the graph of h(x) is a straight line, over integer values x, passing through 0 and 1. Hence  $h(x) = \frac{x}{N}$  is the unique solution to this system of equations. Here it is easy that we are certain to eventually hit the boundary states. Hence for the simple symmetric random walk started at  $0 \le x \le N$ 

$$\mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } N \text{ before } 0) = \frac{x}{N}$$

which is a famous result as due to Abraham de Moivre around 1730.



#### 6.3.1 Gambler's Ruin with a Biased Coin

What are the harmonic equations? We reason that this results in the same equations, with slight modifications

$$h(x) = ph(x+1) + qh(x-1)$$
  $(0 < x < N)$ 

which we may solve via algebra as done in Durett (p. 58). Pitman shows us a more clever way, related to the idea of a martingale. There is a discussion of this problem in the context of martingales at the end of the text, as aspects of a hitting-time problem (we will revisit this at the end of the course). Observe that h(x) = x is no longer harmonic when  $q \neq p$  (biased coin). Now by some good guesswork you can discover that

$$h(x) = \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^x$$

is a harmonic function for the p-q walk. We check this

$$Ph(x) = p\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^{x+1} + q\left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^{x-1}$$
$$= \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^{x} = h(x)$$

This is a bit clever, but it is not a bad idea to try a solution of the form  $h(x) = r^x$  of the harmonic equations, and if you do that you will get a quadratic which forces r = 1 (boring) or r = q/p (very useful) as above. As soon as we have found this

h(x), we can argue as before: from h = Ph get  $h = P^n h$  and so for each  $n \ge 0$ 

$$h(x) = \mathbb{E}_x \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^{X_n}$$

$$= \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^N \mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } N \text{ before } n) + \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^0 \mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } 0 \text{ before } n) + \sum_{y \notin \{0, N\}} \cdots$$

Now taking  $n \to \infty$ , this final term goes to zero. Hence in the limit and additionally

$$\mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit }N) + \mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit }0) = 1$$

Now we have two equations and two unknowns. Solve these, and you get the solution found by Durrett on p.58.

# LECTURE 7

# First Step Analysis Continued

## 7.1 First Step Analysis: Continued

The simple idea here is to derive equations by conditioning on step 1. We can find all sorts of things about Markov chains by doing exactly this. Pitman notes that the text keeps doing this technique without explicitly pointing it out. Recall that first step analysis for a Markov chain  $(X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots)$ , we consider some random variable

$$Y = Y(X_0, X_1, X_2, \dots)$$

If we know  $\mathbb{E}_x Y$  for all states x and we want to compute the expectation of Y for a chain with  $X_0$  assigned a probability distribution  $\lambda = \lambda(x)$   $x \in S$ , denoted  $\mathbb{E}_{\lambda} Y$ , we would take

$$\mathbb{E}_{\lambda}Y = \sum_{x \in S} \lambda(x) \mathbb{E}_x Y$$

Put simply, the expectation of a random variable Y is the expectation of the expectation of Y conditioned on  $X_0$ . That is,

$$\mathbb{E}(Y) = \mathbb{E}\big[\mathbb{E}(Y \mid X_0)\big].$$

We may want to condition on  $X_1$  as well, which is how we derived the harmonic equations from the previous lecture. Let's look at an example where we can do this again.

#### 7.1.1 Example: Mean Hitting Times

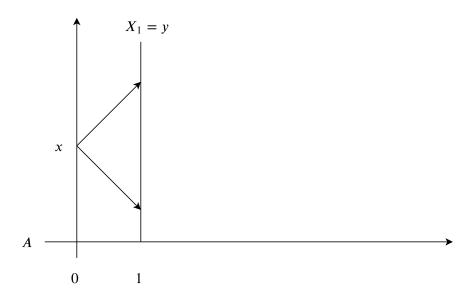
Suppose we have a set of states A (we can make them absorbing as a matter of technique, it makes no difference to the answer), and consider

$$V_A := \min\{n \ge 0 : X_n \in A\}.$$

We want to find  $\mathbb{E}_x V_A$  for any initial state x. If  $x \in A$ , then we trivially have  $\mathbb{P}_x(V_A = 0) = 1$  and hence  $\mathbb{E}_x V_A = 0$ . Now, for any state x define a function for the mean

$$m(x) = m_A(x) := \mathbb{E}_x V_A$$

where we drop the subscript A as it is understood from context. We want equations for m(x).



From x, we hit  $X_1 = y$  with probability P(x, y). Now given  $X_0 = x$ ,  $X_1 = y$ , for  $x \notin A$  we have

$$\mathbb{E}(V_A | X_0 = x, X_1 = y) = 1 + \mathbb{E}_y(V_A)$$

Notice that this is correct if  $y \in A$ . If we happen to hit A =at time 1, then  $V_A = 1$  and the second term  $\mathbb{E}_y(V_A)$  is zero. Additionally, this is correct if  $y \notin A$ , that is, because  $x \notin A$  we are certain to take at least 1 step, with  $\mathbb{E}_x V_A \geq 1$ . This means that we can write down a system of equations, relating to the mean times

$$m(x) = 1 + \sum_{y \in S} P(x, y) m(y) \qquad (x \notin A)$$

This system should be solved together with the boundary condition

$$m(x) = 0 \qquad (x \in A)$$

If we have only a finite number of non-absorbing states, then we have a finite number of linear equations and this number of unknowns.

In the text, Theorem 1.29 on page 62 states that as long as we can reach the boundary from the any state in the interior (in some number of steps) with positive probability, provided there are only a finite number of interior states, this system of equations will have a unique solution. In practice, in examples, you just write down the system of linear equations and solve them by standard methods or software.

#### 7.1.2 Application: Duration of a Fair Game

The usual Gambler's Ruin for a fair coin. Text Example 1.52 on page 66, We start with x and play for  $\pm$ 1 gains with equal probability until we hit either \$0 or some

53

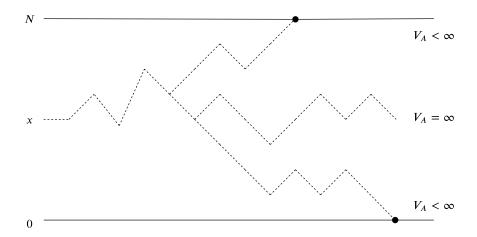
#### \$N. Last lecture, we showed

$$\mathbb{P}_x(\text{reach } N \text{ before } 0) = \frac{x}{N}$$

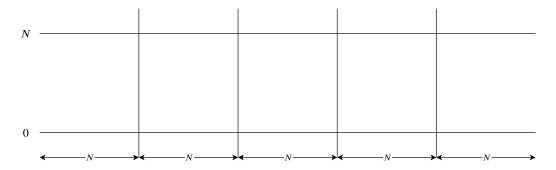
Set  $A := \{0, N\}$  as our absorbing states and  $V_A$  the duration of the game, where

$$V_A := \min\{n \ge 0 : X_n \in A\}$$

Recall that there remains the scenario of never hitting the boundary A, but we have already found before that the probability assigned to this uncountable infinite number of never-ending paths is zero.



To see this, notice that for any 'block' of N steps, there is a strictly positive probability that we hit a boundary state. That is  $\mathbb{E}_x V_A < \infty$  with probability 1 and for all  $x \in S$ .



We use this argument to form the geometric bound as we have before in a previous lecture. To find  $m(x) := \mathbb{E}_x V_A$  we first write out the boundary conditions. That is,

$$m(0) = m(N) = 0$$

Now the nontrivial cases, we again break into two parts

$$m(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{2}m(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}m(x-1)$$
  $0 < x < N$ 

Then we solve for this system of equations. Recall that previously we considered the simpler system  $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}h(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}h(x-1)$ , which implies that h(x) is linear, more pedantically *affine*. For constants a, b, we have

$$h(x) = ax + b$$

Now consider the addition of a quadratic term:

$$m(x) = cx^2 + ax + b$$

Then we observe

$$\frac{1}{2}c(x+1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}c(x-1)^2 = cx^2 + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}c(2x) + \frac{1}{2}c(-2x)}_{=0} + c$$

Now from this sort of consideration, m(x) as above solves the equation

$$\frac{1}{2}m(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}m(x-1) = c + m(x)$$

Hence, we conclude that our system of equations is solved by a quadratic function of the form  $m(x) = cx^2 + ax + b$ , where c = -1.

#### 7.1.3 Summarizing our Findings

Observe

$$g_1(x) = ax + b \implies \frac{1}{2}g_1(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}g_1(x-1) = g_1(x)$$
  
 $g_2(x) = cx^2 \implies \frac{1}{2}g_2(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}g_2(x-1) = g_2(x) + c$ 

These together imply

$$g(x) = cx^{2} + ax + b = (g_{1} + g_{2})(x) \implies \frac{1}{2}g(x+1) + \frac{1}{2}g(x-1) = g(x) + c$$

Hence we have that

$$m(x) := cx^2 + bx + a$$

solves our equations from earlier if and only if c = -1. Then plugging this in, we have

$$m(x) = -x^2 + bx + a$$

and additionally recall that m(0) = m(N) = 0. There's only one quadratic that satisfies these, namely

$$m(x) = -x(x - N) = \boxed{x(N - x)}$$

In summary, with the idea to try a quadratic (which Pitman notes is not too different from noticing before that a harmonic function for the fair gambler's ruin chain must be linear), finding the exact solution is not hard. See text for solution of the mean duration of an unfair game, and many further examples.

## 7.2 Conditioning on other variables

Commonly in the analysis of Markov chains it is effective to condition on  $X_0$  or on  $X_1$ . Also common to condition on  $X_n$  (example in homework). Now we would like to consider that these may not be the only variables on which we would like to condition. There may be more clever techniques, where we employ our imagination to find a more apt conditioning variable, often a suitable random time. Also, exploiting the addition rule for expectation, after breaking a random variable into a sum of two variables, should be kept in mind.

#### 7.2.1 Runs in Independent Bernoulli(p) Trials

We want to find the mean time until we see N successes in a row. Let  $\tau_N$  be the random number of trials required. e.g. for N=3 if the outcome of the trials is

$$(X_1, X_2, \ldots) = (0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, \ldots)$$

then  $\tau_N = 11$ . Note that in treating Bernoulli trials, and more generally i.i.d. sequences, it is customary to start indexing by 1, whereas for general discussion of Markov chains it is customary to start indexing by 0. Python programmers should like the Markovian convention.

The exact distribution of  $\tau_N$  is tricky. You can find its generating function if you like, but we only want the expectation here, which is relatively simple. Of course, because  $\mathbb{P}(\tau_N \geq N) = 1$ 

$$\mathbb{E}\tau_N = \sum_{k=N}^{\infty} k \ \mathbb{P}(\tau_N = k)$$
$$= \sum_{k=N}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(\tau_N \ge k)$$

but neither the point probabilities in the first equality nor the tail probabilities needed for the second tail sum formula sum have a simple formula. Hence we ask, "What should we condition on?" As a student suggests, try  $\tau_{N-1}$ . That is, having a string of N-1 ones in a row.

$$\tau_N = \tau_{N-1} + \Delta_N, \text{ where } \Delta_N = \begin{cases} 1 \text{ with probability } p \\ 1 + \text{a copy of } \tau_N \text{ otherwise} \end{cases}$$

If you are eager to see the run of N ones, you are disappointed if the trial following trial  $\tau_{N-1}$  is a 0, as this means you must start over again. However, this regeneration of the problem is exactly what is needed to help find the sequence of means  $\mu_N$ 

Define  $\mu_N := \mathbb{E}\tau_N$ , then the above observation gives

$$\mu_N = \mu_{N-1} + 1 + q\mu_N$$

where rearranging gives

$$\mu_N = \frac{\mu_{N-1} + 1}{p}$$

We test this

$$\mu_1 = \frac{1}{p}$$

by the mean of geometric. Similarly,

$$\mu_2 = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{p} + 1\right)}{p} = \frac{1+p}{p^2}$$

and repeating this gives

$$\mu_N = \frac{1 + p + p^2 + \dots + p^{N-1}}{p^N}$$

In summary, we solved this problem by noticing that to get to N in a row, we needed to first get to N-1 in a row, and then condition on the next trial. Here is another approach:

#### 7.2.2 Conditioning on the First Zero

Define  $G_0$  as the first  $n \geq 1$  such that  $X_n = 0$  (that is, wait for the first 0). In other words,  $G_0$  is one plus the length of the first run of 1s. Then  $G_0 \sim \mathbf{Geometric}(q)$ , where q is the failure probability. It seems reasonable to try to find  $\mathbb{E}\tau_N$  by conditioning on  $G_0$ , as  $G_0$  is closely related to  $\tau_N$ , and we know the distribution of  $G_0$ . If  $G_0 > N$ , then  $\tau_N = N$ . On the other hand, if  $G_0 = g \leq N$ , then the problem starts over: there is the equality in distribution

$$(\hat{\tau}_N - g \mid G_0 = g) \stackrel{d}{=} \tau_N \qquad (0 < g < N)$$

meaning that conditional given  $G_0 = g$ ) the remaining time  $\tau_N - g$  has the same distribution as  $\tau_N$ . This is by a rather obvious form of the Strong Markov Property for Bernoulli trials.

Therefore, by conditioning on  $G_0$ , we have

$$\mathbb{E}\tau_N = \left[\sum_{g=1}^N \mathbb{P}(G_0 = g)(g + \mathbb{E}\tau_N)\right] + \mathbb{P}(G_0 > N)N$$

Now let  $\mu_N := \mathbb{E}\tau_N$ , so that the earlier equation gives

$$\mu_N = \sum_{q=1}^{N} p^{g-1} q(g + \mu_N) + p^N N$$

We look at a simple N=2 case. Here in this solution, we have:

$$\mu_2 = p^0 q (1 + \mu_2) + pq (2 + \mu_2) + p^2 \cdot 2$$
  
$$\mu_2 (1 - q - pq) = q + 2pq + 2p^2$$

hence easily  $\mu_2 = (1-p)/p^2$  as before. You can easily check this method gives the same conclusion as before for general N.

# LECTURE 8

# **Infinite State Spaces and Probability Generating Functions**

## 8.1 Infinite State Spaces

§1.11 is starred in the text, but is not optional for our course. We'll discuss techniques for both finite and infinite state spaces, in particular

- probability generating functions
- potential kernel (AKA) Green matrix

Pitman gives a list of additional resources with nice problems worth trying. See Bibliography for further details.

- [?] Grimmett, Geoffrey R. and Stirzaker, David R. Probability and Random Processes
- [?] Asmussen, S{}o ren Applied Probability and Queues
- [?] Norris, J. R. Cambridge Series in Statistical and Probabilistic Mathematics
- [?] Feller, William. An Introduction to Probability Theory and its Applications

#### 8.2 Review of Mathematics: Power Series

Know the following by heart, because it'll be on the midterm.

#### 8.2.1 Binomial Theorem

The most important case of the binomial expansion

$$(1+x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k$$

where we should observe

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!} = \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-k+1)}{k(k-1)\cdots1}$$

and it is an important insight that the numerator is a polynomial in n. Pitman comments that no one realized why this is important until about 1670. The reason is that this form can be extended to other powers, namely  $n:=-1,\frac{1}{2},\frac{-1}{2}$ , or any real number  $n\to r\in\mathbb{R}$ . Now look at

$$(1+x)^r = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} {r \choose k} x^k \qquad (|x|<1)$$

which is valid for all real r and all real or complex x with |x| < 1. Notice that the combinatorial meaning of r 'choose' k makes sense only for r = n a positive integer and k a non-negative integer. But the meaning of  $\binom{r}{k}$  is extended to all real numbers r and all non-negative integers k by treating  $\binom{n}{k}$  as a polynomial of degree k in n, then substituting r in place of n in this polynomial.

This is the instance with  $f(x) = x^r$  of the Taylor expansion of a function f about the point 1

$$f(1+x) = f(1) + f'(1)x + \frac{f''(1)}{2!}x^2 + \cdots$$

which for suitable f is valid for |x| < R, where R is the radius of convergence. Usually for our purposes,  $R \ge 1$ . As another Taylor expansion (around 0 instead of 1)

$$e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!}$$

We get exponentials arising as limit of binomial probabilities (e.g. the Poisson distribution). Also, recall that the geometric distribution converges to the exponential distribution with suitable scaling.

# 8.3 Probability Generating Functions

Suppose we have a non-negative integer-valued random variable X, which for simplicity will have non-negative integer values  $X \in \{0, 1, 2, ...\}$ .

### **Probability Generating Function (PGF)**

The probability generating function for a discrete  $X \in \{0, 1, 2, ...\}$  is

$$\phi_X(z) := \mathbb{E} z^X$$

We usually take  $0 \le z \le 1$ . When discussing PGFs, we may push z to  $|z| \le 1$ , but in this course we will work entirely with PGFs defined as a function of an argument  $z \in [0, 1]$ .

Then  $\phi_X(z) \in [0,1]$  too, and there are many contexts in which  $\phi_X(z)$  acquires meaning as the probability of something. Now we can write the above as a power series. Recall that

$$\mathbb{E}g(X) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n)g(n)$$
(8.1)

SO

$$\phi_X(z) := \mathbb{E}Z^X = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n)z^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n z^n$$

where  $p_n := \mathbb{P}(X = n)$ . We worked with PGFs very briefly in a previous lecture, for dice probabilities, namely taking X uniform on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ , and we looked at

$$\phi_X(z) = \frac{1}{6}(z + \dots + z^6)$$

Recall this is where Pitman asked us to look at powers of this expansion in Wolfram Alpha. Notice that by convention,  $0^0 = 1$ , so  $\phi_X(0) = \mathbb{P}(X = 0)$ . Now for any PGF, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\phi_X(z) = \frac{d}{dz} \sum_n \mathbb{P}(X=n)z^n$$

$$= \sum_n \mathbb{P}(X=n)\frac{d}{dz}z^n$$

$$= \sum_n \mathbb{P}(X=n)nz^{n-1}$$

and so we see that

$$\mathbb{E}X = \frac{d}{dz}\phi_X(z)\bigg|_{z=1^-}$$

where we must approach z = 1 from the left if the radius of convergence R is exactly R = 1, but typically R > 1 and you can just evaluate the derivative at z = 1. Perhaps we'd like to compute the variance. We ask, what happens if we differentiate twice?

$$\left(\frac{d}{dz}\right)^2 \phi_X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n)n(n-1)z^{n-2}$$

Again we'd like the z factor to go away, so we set z := 1 and we have

$$\mathbb{E}[X(X-1)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n)n(n-1)$$
$$= \left(\frac{d}{dz}\right)^2 \phi_X(z)\Big|_{z=1^-}$$

Recall that  $X_{\lambda} \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  if and only if:

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{\lambda} = n) = \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^n}{n!},$$

which via the generating function implies

$$\phi_{X_{\lambda}}(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^n z^n}{n!} = e^{-\lambda} e^{\lambda z} = e^{\lambda(z-1)}$$

Easily from the above analysis by d/dz, or otherwise,

$$\mathbb{E}X_{\lambda} = \lambda$$
$$Var(X_{\lambda}) = \lambda$$

A (good) question arises whether  $\phi_X(z)$  is a probability. The answer is yes, because after all the range of values is between 0 and 1, and any such function can be interpreted as a probability. Notably, we have

$$\phi_X(z) = \mathbb{P}(X \le G_{1-z})$$

where  $G_p$  for  $0 \le p \le 1$  denotes a random variable independent of X with the geometric (p) distribution on  $\{0, 1, \ldots\}$ : for  $n \ge 0$ Then

$$\mathbb{P}(G_p = n) = (1 - p)^n p$$
, and  $\mathbb{P}(G_p \ge n) = (1 - p)^n$ .

In summary, we can think of a probability generating function as a probability, and we only need that  $G_{1-z}$  is independent of X.

Now if X, Y are independent, then

$$\begin{split} \mathbb{E}z^{X+Y} &= \mathbb{E}\left[z^X z^Y\right] \\ &= \left[\mathbb{E}z^X\right] \left[\mathbb{E}z^Y\right] \\ &= \phi_X(z) \, \phi_Y(z) \end{split}$$

Hence the PGF of a sum of independent variables is the product of their PGFs.

**Example:** Let  $G_p \sim \text{Geometric}(p)$  on  $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}(G_p = n) = (1 - p)^n p$$
, for  $n = 0, 1, 2, ...$ 

Now if we want to look at the probability generating function, we have

$$\mathbb{E}(z^{G_p}) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} q^n p z^n = \frac{p}{1 - qz}$$

for p+q=1 and |z|<1. Now we look at

$$T_r := G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_r$$

where  $r = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ , and  $G_i$  are all independent geometrically distributed with the same parameter p. The interpretation is to see  $G_p$  as the number of failures before the first success. That is, the number of 0s before the first 1 in independent **Bernoulli()**) 0,1 trials. Then similarly,

$$T_r = T_{r,p} = \text{ number of 0s before } r^{\text{th}} \text{ 1 in indep. } \mathbf{Bernoulli}(p) \text{ 0,1 trials}$$

Looking at i.i.d. copies of  $G_p$  we use generating functions

$$\mathbb{E}z^{T_r} = \left(\frac{p}{1 - qz}\right)^r = p^r (1 - qz)^{-r}$$

$$= p^r (1 + (-qz))^{-r}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} {r \choose n} (-qz)^n,$$

$$= p^r \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(r)_{n\uparrow}}{n!} q^n z^n$$

where we simply plug into Newton's binomial formula. Notice this is

$$\mathbb{E}z^{T_r} = p^r \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(r)_{n\uparrow}}{n!} q^n z^n$$

where

$$(r)_{n\uparrow} := r(r+1)\cdots(r+n-1)$$

$$\frac{(r)_{n!}}{n!} = \binom{r+n-1}{n}$$

From 134, we know this to be the negative binomial distribution. The above formula can be derived directly by counting:  $\binom{r+n-1}{n}$  is the number of ways to place the n failures in the first r+n-1 trials, and the last  $(n+r)^{\text{th}}$  trial must be a 1. But the generating function technique used above is instructive, and can be applied to more difficult problems.

#### 8.4 Probability Generating Functions and Random Sums

Suppose we have  $Y_1, Y_2, \ldots$  i.i.d. non-negative integer random variables, with probability generating function

$$\phi_Y(z) = \mathbb{E}z^{Y_k} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(Y_k = n)z^n$$

the same generating function for all  $Y_k$ . Now consider another random variable,  $X \geq 0$ , integer valued, assumed independent of the sequence of Y's, and look at:

 $S_X = Y_1 + Y_2 + \ldots + Y_X$ , the sum of X independent copies of Y. Then

$$S_n = Y_1 + \dots + Y_n$$
  
$$S_X = Y_1 + \dots + Y_X$$

Now if X = 0 with 0 copies of Y, then our convention is to set the empty sum to give 0. We wish to find the PGF of  $S_X$ . The random index X is annoying, so try conditioning on it

$$\mathbb{E}z^{S_x} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n)\mathbb{E}(z^{S_n})$$
$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(X=n) [\phi_Y(z)]^n$$
$$= \phi_X [\phi_Y(z)]$$

which is a composition of generating functions. In the middle line, recognize this is a generating function, just evaluated at a different location. Notice that for this to hold, we needed to assume that X is independent of  $Y_1, Y_2, \ldots$  Also, there are some easy consequences for moments which you can derive directly or by generating functions, especially  $\mathbb{E}S_X = (\mathbb{E}Y)\mathbb{E}X$  and you can get a formula for  $\mathbb{E}S_X^2$  and hence the variance of  $S_X$ .

#### 8.5 Application: Galton-Watson Branching Process

Assume that we're given some probability distribution (offspring distribution)

$$p_0, p_1, p_2, \dots$$

Start with some fixed number k of individuals in generation 0, where each of these k individuals has offspring with distribution according to X. Our common notation is

$$Z_n := \#$$
 of individuals in generation n

and so we have the following equality in distribution

$$(Z_1 \mid Z_0 = k) \stackrel{d}{=} X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_k$$

where the  $X_i$  are i.i.d.  $\sim p$ . Continuing the problem, given  $Z_0, Z_1, \ldots, Z_n$  with  $Z_n = k$ , then  $Z_{n+1} \sim X_1 + \cdots + X_k$ . It's intuitive to draw this as a tree, where individuals of generation 0 have some number of offspring and some have none. We create a branching tree from one stage to the next. Clearly, $(Z_n)$  is a Markov chain on  $\{0,1,2,\ldots\}$ . Note that state k=0 is absorbing, which fits with the convention of empty sums i.e. summing 0 copies of the offspring variable gives 0.

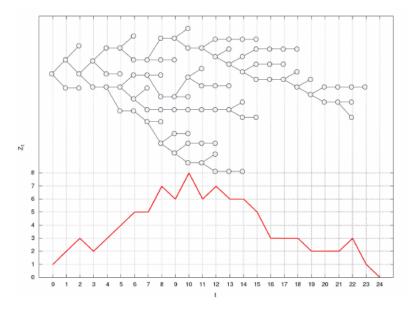


Figure 8.1: See [?] A realization of the Galton-Watson process. At the top, the tree associated to the process is shown, starting from the left  $(Z_0 = 1)$ . At the bottom, the evolution of the number of elements originated in each generation t are displayed.

Here's a visualization of the branching process.

Now, we should expect that generating functions should be helpful, as we are iterating random sums. We'll iterate the composition of generating functions. For simplicity, start with  $z_0 = 1$ . Let  $\phi_n(s) = \mathbb{E}\left(s^{Z_n}\right)$  for  $0 \le s \le 1$ . We see that

$$Z_{n+1} = \text{ sum of } Z_n \text{ copies of } X$$

Hence

$$\phi_1(s) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n s^n = \mathbb{E}s^X$$

which we define as the **offspring generating function**. To find  $\phi_2$ , we look at  $\phi_1(\phi_1(s))$ . That is,

$$\phi_2(s) = \text{PGF of sum of } Z_1 \text{ copies of } X$$
  
=  $\phi_1 [\phi_1(s)]$ 

Continuing, we similarly have

$$\phi_3(s) = \text{PGF of sum of } Z_2 \text{ copies of } X$$
  
=  $\phi_1(\phi_1(\phi_1(s)))$ 

and so on. Now Pitman presents the famous problem of finding the probability of

extinction

$$\mathbb{P}_1(\text{extinction}) = \mathbb{P}_1(Z_n = 0 \text{ for large } n)$$

$$= \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}_1(Z_n = 0)$$

Now we ask, how do we find  $Z_n = 0$ ? We basically have a formula for this. What is the probability that  $Z_1 = 0$ ? This is simply

$$\mathbb{P}_1(Z_1=0)=p_0$$

Then

$$\mathbb{P}_1(Z_2 = 0) = \phi(\phi(0)) = \phi(p_0)$$

and similarly,

$$\mathbb{P}_1(Z_3 = 0) = \phi(\phi(\phi(0))) = \phi(\phi(p_0))$$

and so on. See figure 8.2. This gives the exact formula in general that

$$\mathbb{P}_1(Z_n = 0) = \phi_{n-1}(0)$$

where  $\phi_{n-1}$  is the *n* th iterate of the offspring generating function  $\phi$ . Because  $\phi$  is continuous, it follows that the extinction probability

$$s_0 := \lim_{n \to \infty} \phi_n(s)$$

is a root of the equation

$$s = \phi(s)$$

In general  $s_0$  is the least root s of this equation with  $0 \le s \le 1$ . Note that s = 1 is always a root. Even if you aren't a fan of generating functions, you should note that they are inescapable in the solution to the branching extinction problem. By analysis of the graph of  $\phi$ , which is convex with  $\phi(0) = p_0$  and derivative  $\phi'(1-) = \mu$ , there are three cases:

- supercritical  $(\mu > 1)$ : then there is a unique root  $s_0$  with  $0 \le s_0 < 1$  and  $\phi(s_0) = s_0$ . This is the extinction probability.
- subcritical ( $\mu < 1$ ): then the unique root is  $s_0 = 1$ : extinction is certain;
- critical and non-degenerate ( $\mu = 1$ ) and  $p_0 > 0$ : then  $s_0 = 1$ . See figure 8.3. See figure 8.3. Because the generating function  $\phi$  is convex, the only root returned from fixed point iteration is precisely at 1. This implies that if  $\mu = 1$  and  $p_0 > 0$  the probability of extinction  $\mathbb{P}_1(\text{extinction}) = 1$ . The fluctuations of  $Z_n$  in this case lead with probability one to extinction.

There is a very annoying case for branching processes that we should not forget, which is the degenerate case where  $p_1 := \mathbb{P}(X = 1) = 1$ , which just makes the population stay at 1,  $\mathbb{P}_1(Z_n = 1) = 1$  for all n, and the extinction probability is 0. There is no random fluctuation in it. The book presents this conclusion in different ways.

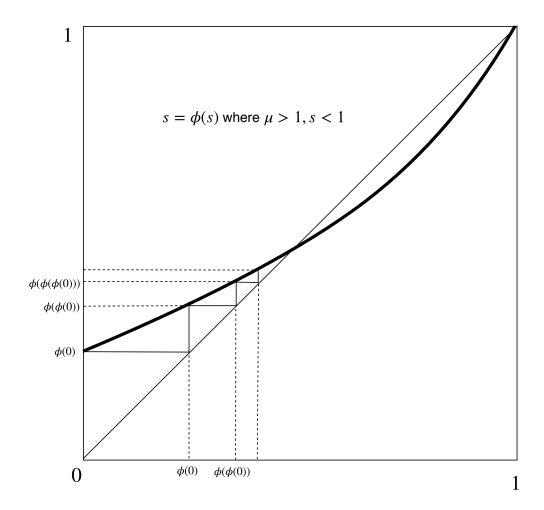


Figure 8.2: Supercritical. As an example, we sketch  $(\phi(s))$  with respect to s for the generating function of **Poisson** (3/2). This gives a fixed point iteration returning the unique root s of  $s = \phi(s)$  with s < 1. Here the mean is larger than 1  $(\phi'(1) = \mu > 1)$ .

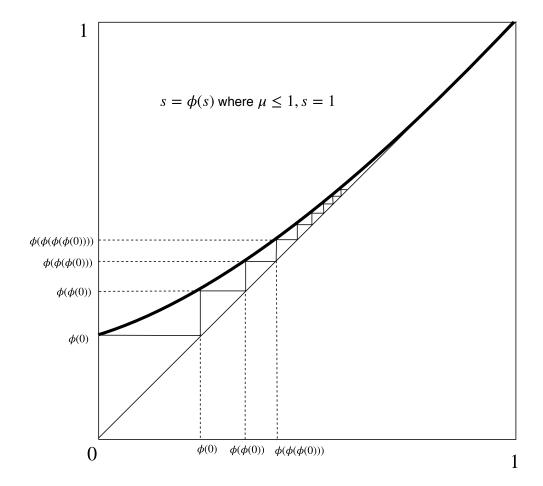


Figure 8.3: Subcritical or critical non-degenerate. We see that if  $p_0 > 0$  and  $\mu := \sum_n np_n \le 1$ , then the probability generating function is a convex curve with slope  $\le 1$  at 1 and value  $p_0 > 0$  at 0. So the curve cannot ever cross the diagonal s. There is a no root of  $\phi(s) = s$  with s < 1, and hence  $\phi(\phi(\phi(\cdots(0)))) \to 1$  as  $n \to \infty$ 

# LECTURE 9

# **Potential Theory (Green Matrices)**

# 9.1 Potential Theory (Green Matrices)

Green was an English mathematician who mainly worked on differential equations. This is a concept borrowed from differential equations, applied to our present context. Let P be a transition matrix on a countable state space S. Define

$$G(x,y) := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n(x,y)$$
$$= \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(X_n = y)$$
$$= \mathbb{E}_x N_y$$

As a bit of book-keeping, we define

$$N_y := \text{total } \# \text{ visits to } y \text{ including a visit at time } n = 0$$

We can tell if states are transient or recurrent by looking at the Green matrix. Recall that we saw before that

$$G(x,x) < \infty \iff x \text{ is transient}$$

$$G(x,x) = \infty \iff x \text{ is recurrent}$$

**Remark:** If S is finite, then it is obvious that  $G(x,x) = \infty$  for some x. Particularly, some state must be recurrent. Let us start with the case where we have *infinite state space* and a *transient chain*. Recall that we defined

$$T_y := \min\{n \ge 1 : X_1 = y\}$$

$$V_y := \min\{n \ge 0 : X_n = y\}$$

The following is generally true with no assumptions. There is a relation between G(x, y) and G(y, y). Always,  $G(x, y) \leq G(y, y)$ , and the ratio is a hitting probability

## **Key Fact**

For all x and y (including x = y),

$$G(x,y) = \mathbb{P}_x(V_y < \infty)G(y,y)$$

Why is this formula true? Simply,  $\mathbb{E}_x N_y$  is computed by conditioning on the event  $(N_y > 0)$  which is identical to the event  $(V_y < \infty)$ . On this event, once we get to y, the chain starts over as if from y. To be more formal, we would cite the Strong Markov Property. Now let's look at a key example.

# **9.1.1** Example

Consider a simple random walk on the integers  $\mathbb{Z} := \{\dots, -1, 0, 1, \dots\}$ , where from any integer, we go left one with probability q and right one with probability p. Pitman notes that we have something similar to this on homework 4, where we are moving on a circle. However, we could very easily unwrap the circle into the integer line. Let's compute the potential kernel. First of all, we ask if we really need the first parameter x, where  $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ . The definition of subtraction (translation invariance of the transition matrix) gives us:

$$G(x,y) = G(0, y - x)$$

So it's enough to discuss G(0, y). Because of the key fact above, most of the action is looking at G(y, y) = G(0, 0), and hence

$$G(x,y) = G(0,0) \underbrace{\mathbb{P}_x(\text{event of hitting } y)}$$

These two are our key ingredients. Let's first compute G(0,0). Notice that this random walk can only come back on even n (this is a periodic walk).

$$G(0,0) := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^{n}(0,0)$$
$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} P^{2m}(0,0)$$
$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} {2m \choose m} p^{m} q^{m}$$

and comparing this against the case where  $p=q=\frac{1}{2}$  and adjusting, we have:

$$G(0,0) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} {2m \choose m} 2^{-2m} (4pq)^m$$

Now Pitman states the following fact and requires that we perform this tedious computation once in our life

$$\binom{2m}{m} 2^{-2m} = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) m_{\uparrow}}{m!} = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \left(\frac{1}{2} + 1\right) \cdots \left(\frac{1}{2} + m - 1\right)}{m(m-1) \cdots 1}$$

and we know (from the previous lecture) that for |x| < 1

$$(1+x)^r = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} {r \choose m} x^r$$

$$\implies (1-x)^{-r} = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} {-r \choose m} (-x)^r$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{(r)_{m\uparrow}}{m!} x^m$$

where we call this the negative binomial expansion. Bringing this back to the problem at hand (recognizing the negative binomial coefficient), we have

$$G(0,0) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)_{m\uparrow}}{m!} (4pq)^m$$

by negative binomial expansion with  $r:=\frac{1}{2}$  and x:=4pq. Then this gives

$$G(0,0) = (1 - 4pq)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$

Pitman reminds that in using this expansion, we should always be cautious for convergence in ensuring |x| < 1. Hence in this problem, provided 4pq < 1 (equivalent to  $p \neq \frac{1}{2}$ )

Notice that if  $p = \frac{1}{2}$ , then in our formula we have (1-1) = 0 to a negative power, which gives us  $\infty$ . We can easily check

$$\binom{2m}{m} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2m} \sim \frac{c}{\sqrt{m}} \qquad (m \to \infty)$$

This precisely gives  $G(0,0) = \infty$  in the case  $p = \frac{1}{2}$ . Hence

$$G(0,0) = \begin{cases} \infty, & p = \frac{1}{2} \\ (1 - 4pq)^{-\frac{1}{2}}, & p \neq \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$$

Pitman says we can be a bit cuter about this. Notice

$$1 - 4pq = 1 - 4p + 4p^2 = (2p - 1)^2$$

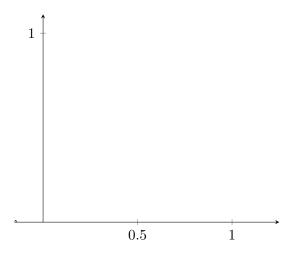


Figure 9.1: Graph of 4p(1-p)

Therefore,

$$G(0,0) = \left[ (2p-1)^2 \right]^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$
$$= \frac{1}{|2p-1|}$$
$$= \frac{1}{2|p-\frac{1}{2}|}$$

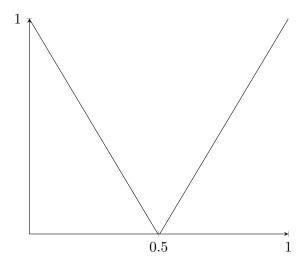


Figure 9.2: Graph of |2x-1|. Similar graph present in homework, with the exception of a smoother valley towards 1/2, as compared to the sharp corner present here.

9.3 Escape Probability 73

# 9.2 Escape Probability

We'll continue the p, q walk. Consider the probability, starting at 0, that we never come back, which we write as  $\mathbb{P}_0(T_0 = \infty)$ , and set this equal to w.

Now we ask, what is w in terms of G(0,0)? Recall that  $G(0,0) = \mathbb{E}_0 N_0$ , the expected number of hits on 0. Again, our convention is to count the starting position at time 0. Then

$$\mathbb{P}_0(N_0 = 1) = \mathbb{P}_0(T_0 = \infty) = w$$

which is familiar from a past discussion. That is, under  $P_0$ , starting at 0,  $N_0$  has a very friendly distribution. Brief Recap: Geometric Distribution Recall that for  $N \sim \text{Geometric}(p)$  on  $\{1, 2, 3, ...\}$  with probability of success is p. Then

$$\mathbb{P}(N=n) = (1-p)^{n-1}p$$

Hence for our problem

$$\mathbb{P}_0(N_0 = n) = (1 - w)^{n-1}w$$

so

$$N_0 \sim \text{Geometric}(w)$$

Hence we can do away with our placeholder w, so that  $w = \frac{1}{G(0.0)}$ , so that

$$\mathbb{P}_0(T_0 = \infty) = \frac{1}{G(0,0)} = 2|p - 1/2|$$

The homework problem graph is very similar to this, but with a curve instead of a sharp 'valley' at 1/2

# 9.3 More Formulas for Simple Random Walks (SRW)

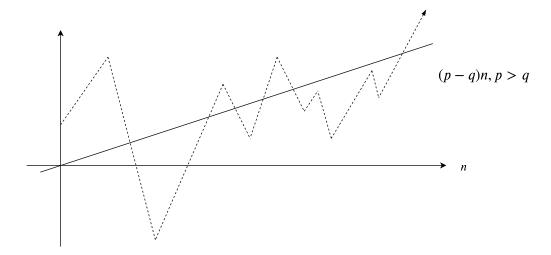
We consider the same context as our example. Let  $S_n = \Delta_1 + \cdots + \Delta_n$ , where each  $\Delta_i$  is either +1 or -1 with probability p or q, respectively. What is the probability that  $S_n$  tends to  $+\infty$ ? This depends on p. In the recurrent case, this probability will be zero. Now if p > q, then we have a "drift" for our expectation that carries us off to  $\infty$ . That tells us that

$$\mathbb{P}(S_n \to +\infty) = \begin{cases} 0, & p < q \\ 1, & p > 1 \end{cases}$$

or more neatly, using indicator notation

$$\mathbb{P}(S_n \to +\infty) = \mathbb{1}\left(p > \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

$$\mathbb{P}(S_n \to -\infty) = \mathbb{1}\left(p < \frac{1}{2}\right)$$



Now assume p > q. Then for  $x \ge 1$ , we have

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_0 < \infty) = \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^x$$

by Gambler's ruin probability (in the limit) from a previous lecture. Now  $\frac{q}{p} < 1$ , so

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_0 = \infty) = 1 - \left(\frac{q}{p}\right)^x$$

$$\mathbb{P}_{-x}(T_0 < \infty) = 1$$

because the drift up  $(\uparrow)$  takes us to  $+\infty$  with probability 1 and must hit 0 along the way.

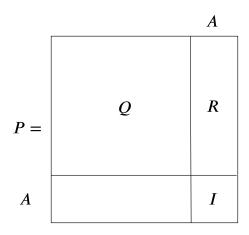
# 9.4 Green's Matrix for Finite State Space S

The entries G(x,y) are only interesting if y is a transient state. Take the example where the set A is an absorbing set of states, and let S-A (or  $S\setminus A$ ) be interior states, and

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_A < \infty) = 1 \qquad \forall x \in S$$

In the Gambler's Ruin example, take equal probability  $(\frac{1}{2}\uparrow,\frac{1}{2}\downarrow)$ . Let  $S:=\{0,1,\ldots,N\}$  and  $A=\{0,N\}$ . In the matrix (see next page), Q is a  $(S-A)\times(S-A)$  matrix. We claim that for  $x,y\in S-A$ 

$$G(x,y) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n(x,y)$$
 (from earlier)  
=  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Q^n(x,y)$ 



because  $P^n(x,y)$  is a sum of products along paths through interior states only, and P(w,z) = Q(w,z)) for all transitions (w,z) contributing to such products. Notice that Q is **not** stochastic; in fact, we say that Q is "sub-stochastic". We see

$$(Q1)(x) = \mathbb{P}_x(X_1 \notin A)$$

which will sometimes be less than 1. In any case, it's  $\leq 1$ . We want to focus only on the non-degenerate (interesting) part of G. So, assuming  $\mathbb{P}_x(V_a < \infty) > 0$  (there is some positive probability), then  $G(x, a) = \infty$  for every a. This follows from

$$G(x,a) = \mathbb{P}_x(V_a < \infty) \underbrace{G(a,a)}_{=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1 = \infty}$$

**Remark** Now we'll throw away all the absorbing states for our discussion, so that all our matrices are indexed by S - A. We're shrinking our matrix to focus on the interesting portion of our potential kernel. Hence

$$G = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Q^n, \text{ on } S - A$$
$$= I + Q + Q^2 + Q^2 + \cdots$$

and compare against

$$QG = Q + Q^2 + Q^3 + \cdots$$

and subtracting these gives

$$G - QG = G - GQ = G(I - Q) = I$$

which implies

$$G = (I - Q)^{-1} \tag{***}$$

Computationally, this boils down to simply using our computers to crunch the inverse. Of course, for large matrix powers, we may run into underflow, overflow, or computationally singular matrices. However, there are ways to treat this issue within numerical linear algebra.

#### 9.4.1 Return to Gambler's Ruin

We'd like to find  $G(x, \cdot)$ , which is the row x of the Green matrix for Gambler's Ruin. Take

$$G - GQ = I \implies G = I + GQ$$

Now the row  $G(x, \cdot)$  is determined in general by

$$G(x,y) = 1(x = y) + \sum_{z} G(x,z)Q(z,y)$$

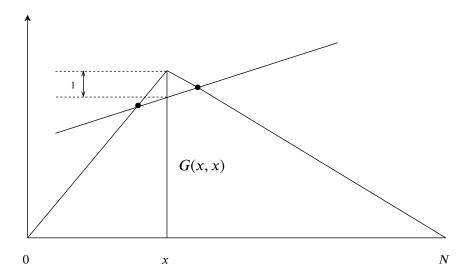
which for the Gambler's Ruin chain becomes

$$G(x,y) = \mathbb{1}(x=y) + \frac{1}{2}G(x,y-1) + \frac{1}{2}G(x,y+1)$$

with the boundary conditions that

- if y = 1 then G(x, 0) = 0
- if y = N 1 then G(x, N) = 0

Now we'd like to graph  $y \mapsto G(x, y)$ .



If we ignore the indicator term, the right two terms gives a straight line from where we start at x, to the boundary, where the function must vanish. So the graph is a tent with its peak at x, and the equation for x says this peak value G(x,x) is 1 greater than the average of values to its right and left. That indicates how high the peak is, so the equations determine  $G(x,\cdot)$  completely. From this consideration

$$G(x,y) = \begin{cases} \frac{y}{x}G(x,x), & 0 \le y \le x\\ \frac{N-y}{N-x}G(x,x), & x \le y \le N \end{cases}$$

Also

$$G(x,x) - 1 = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{x-1}{x} + \frac{N - (x+1)}{N - x} \right) G(x,x)$$

which is easily solved to give

$$G(x,x) = \frac{2x(N-x)}{N}$$

We have two important checks on this calculation. We know

$$\mathbb{P}_x(\text{ hit } 0 \text{ before } N) = 1 - \frac{x}{N} = \frac{N - x}{N}$$

But we can compute this by conditioning on  $T_0$ : for 0 < x < N

$$\mathbb{P}_{x}(\text{ hit 0 before }N) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{x}(T_{0} = n+1)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{x}(X_{n} = 1, X_{n+1} = 0)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{x}(X_{n} = 1) \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= G(x, 1) \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{x} \frac{2x(N-x)}{N} \frac{1}{2} = \frac{N-x}{N}$$

Similarly, by the same method, get

$$\mathbb{P}_x(\text{hit } N \text{ before } 0) = \frac{x}{N}$$

as before. Also from before, we found  $\mathbb{E}_x V_{0N} = x(N-x)$  which we can now check using the Green matrix

$$\mathbb{E}_x V_{0N} = \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{y=1}^{N-1} N_y \tag{9.1}$$

$$= \sum_{y=1}^{N-1} G(x,y) \tag{9.2}$$

$$= \sum_{y=1}^{x-1} G(x,y) + G(x,x) + \sum_{y=x+1}^{N-1} G(x,y)$$
 (9.3)

$$= \dots = x(N-x) \tag{9.4}$$

where you can easily fill in the "···."

# 9.4.2 Conclusion

Whenever it is possible to evaluate the Green matrix G you have immediate access to both hitting probabilities and mean hitting times as in the example above. See the text around (1.26) on page 62 for other applications of the same method.

# LECTURE 10

# The Fundamental Matrix of a Positive Recurrent Chain

#### 10.1 Comments on Homework 5

This week's homework is posted as a worksheet on bCourses, and there is one correction as posted on Piazza. The first two problems are quite easy. The first is on branching processes.

For the second problem, we'll be frustrated if we don't know about Poisson thinning. This is Poisson thinning in disguise within a Markov chain.

In words, this means that if we have a Poisson  $(\mu)$  number of independent Bernoulli(p) trials, the count of successes is Poisson  $(\lambda p)$ . We should use the 'obvious' generating function to show this.

Now, a hint for the Kac identities, which are about a stationary process of 0s and 1s. With an informal notation, the claim is that in a stationary sequence of 0s and 1s  $\mathbb{P}(1 \underbrace{000}_{n}) = \mathbb{P}(\underbrace{000}_{n} 1)$ . This is much weaker than assuming reversibility (this is only for one such pattern). As a hint:

$$\mathbb{P}(1000) = \mathbb{P}(*000) - \mathbb{P}(0000),$$

where \* acts as a wild-card and can be a 0 or 1. Once you have worked with this idea, it takes about 4 lines to solve the problem.

The exercise on tail generating functions is just routine for us to get to get practice with generating functions.

The renewal generating function problem is relatively easy from the result of #4. We'll discuss a bit of renewal theory today in-class.

# 10.2 Renewal Generating Functions

For our discussions today, we assume P is irreducible.

We look at the summation

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( u_n - \frac{1}{\mu} \right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ P^n(0,0) - \pi(0) \right],$$

where there is an underlying Markov chain, P is our transition matrix with stationary probability  $\pi$ , and we assume irreducible and aperiodic.

We take the state 0 to be a special state. Then in the language of Renewal theory (by definition, returning to our initial state),

$$u_n = P^n(0,0) = \mathbb{P}_0(\text{return to } 0 \text{ at time } n) = \mathbb{P}(\text{renewal at } n).$$

and the mean inter-renewal time is  $\mu = 1/\pi(0)$ . This formula arises from looking at a natural generalization of the Potential kernel (Green matrix):

$$G := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n = (I - P)^{-1},$$

for a Markov matrix P. This matrix G is very useful for transient chains, when all entries of G are finite. We may ask, what is the Green matrix if P is recurrent? In general

$$G(x,y) = \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n(x,y).$$

In words, this is  $\mathbb{E}_x(\# \text{ of hits on } y \text{ with infinite time horizon})$ . We know

$$G(x,y) = \infty, \forall_{x,y \in S} \iff P \text{ is recurrent}$$

Finite state irreducible P are very interesting. They have a stationary distribution  $\pi$ , with  $\pi P = \pi$ . However,  $G(x,y) = \infty$  for all x and y, which is of no interest. However,, there is another matrix associated with a positive recurrent chain which is nearly as informative as  $G = (1 - P)^{-1}$  for a transient chain.

Assume for simplicity that S is finite, and that P is aperiodic. Then we know a lot about  $P^n$ . We know

$$P^n(x,y) \to \pi(y)$$
 as  $n \to \infty$ .

Informally, the process loses track of its starting state x, and no matter what the value x of  $X_0$  the distribution of  $X_n$  given  $X_0 = x$  approaches the limit distribution  $\pi$  as  $n \to \infty$ .

As an aside, we invent the notation 1 for a column vector of all 1s: so  $\mathbb{1}(x) = 1$ , for all  $x \in S$ . So  $\pi P = \pi$ , and  $\pi \mathbb{1} = 1$ .

A bit 'cuter': we use matrix notation to write simply:

$$P^n \to \Pi := \mathbb{1}\pi \text{ as } n \to \infty$$

where the limit matrix  $\Pi$  is the matrix with all rows equal to  $\pi$ . Notice that  $P^n \to \Pi$  rapidly as  $n \to \infty$ . If we're careful about this,

$$|P^n(x,y) - \pi(y)| \le c\rho^n$$
 for some  $c < \infty$  and  $0 < \rho < 1$ .

This implies that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |P^n(x,y) - \pi(y)| < \infty,$$

which then implies that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( P^n - \Pi \right)$$

exists, entrywise as a limit matrix.

Look what happens when we square  $(P - \Pi)$ . Recall that matrix multiplication is not commutative; however, we can still perform the expansion:

$$(P - \Pi)^2 = (P - \Pi)(P - \Pi)$$
  
=  $P^2 - P\Pi - \Pi P + \Pi^2$   
=  $P^2 - \Pi - \Pi + \Pi$   
=  $P^2 - \Pi$ 

as you can easily show. In general, the product of any number of factors P and  $\Pi$  is  $\Pi$ , so long as there is at least one  $\Pi$ . Hence,

$$(P - \Pi)^n = P^n - \Pi \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \dots$$

where we need only use the binomial theorem to evaluate the coefficient of  $\Pi$ . Beware that

$$(P - \Pi)^0 = I \neq I - \Pi = P^0 - \Pi$$

which means that the n=0 term must be treated separately in calculations such as the following:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (P^n - \Pi) = I - \Pi + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (P^n - \Pi)$$
$$= I - \Pi + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (P - \Pi)^n$$
$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (P - \Pi)^n - \Pi$$

Recall that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} K^n = (I - K)^{-1},$$

for suitable K (like a sub-stochastic matrix). Now this is the case for  $K := P - \Pi$ , and we can define:

$$Z := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (P - \Pi)^n = (I - P + \Pi)^{-1}$$

which is called the *fundamental matrix* of the irreducible, recurrent Markov chain. Our homework is to look at

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( u_n - \frac{1}{\mu} \right),\,$$

for a renewal sequence  $u_n$ . We can always write this, for a suitable Markov matrix P with invariant probability  $\pi$ ,  $\Pi = \mathbb{1}\pi$  and fundamental matrix Z as above, (see "renewal chain" early in the text), as

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( u_n - \frac{1}{\mu} \right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( P^n(0,0) - \pi(0) \right) = Z(0,0) - \pi(0)$$
 (10.1)

To summarize this discussion:

• for an aperiodic recurrent P with finite state space S and  $\pi P = \pi$ , let  $\Pi := \mathbb{1}\pi$ . Then the matrix  $I - P + \Pi$  has an inverse Z as above.

This result is true also for aperiodic P, except that the usual partial sums of the series diverge, and so the series must be evaluated using an Abel sum:

$$Z := (I - P + \Pi)^{-1} = \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (1 - P)^n s^n$$

as discussed further in the homework for the diagonal entries of Z corresponding to (10.1).

**Example:** Consider the period 2 transition probability matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \implies \Pi = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix} \implies I - P + \Pi = \begin{bmatrix} 3/2 & -1/2 \\ -1/2 & 3/2 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is easily inverted to give

$$Z = (I - P + \Pi)^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 3/4 & 1/4 \\ 1/4 & 3/4 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (10.2)

In this example  $P^n(0,0)$  for n = 0, 1, 2, ... gives the sequence (1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, 1, 0, ...), with  $\pi(0) = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\mu = 1/\pi(0) = 2$ . Notice that

$$(P^n(0,0) - \pi(0), n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots) = \left(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \cdots\right),$$

which gives an oscillating sum if left untreated. Using an Abel sum, we can check that

$$\lim_{s \uparrow 1} \left( P^n(0,0) - \pi(0) \right) s^n = \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-s)^n = \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{(1+s)} = \frac{1}{4}$$
 (10.3)

Whereas according to (10.1) and (10.2) the same limit is evaluated as

$$Z(0,0) - \pi(0) = \frac{3}{4} - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}.$$
 (10.4)

As detailed in later sections there are lots of formulas for features of a recurrent Markov chain in terms of entries of the fundamental matrix Z. For transient matrices, we express things in terms of entries of the Green matrix. For recurrent chains, we express things in terms of entries of Z.

#### 10.3 Variance of Sums Over a Markov chain

A first indication of the importance of the matrix Z comes from computation of variances in the Central Limit Theorem (CLT) for Markov chains.

A key special case arises when  $P = \Pi$ . This means that under  $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  with  $X_0 \sim \lambda$  all the following variables are iid with  $X_1 \sim \pi$ ,  $X_2 \sim \pi$ , and so on. In this (iid) case with  $P = \Pi$ , and more generally, we look at:

$$S_n(f) := \sum_{k=1}^n f(X_k),$$

which we may regard as the reward from n steps of the chain if we are paid f(x) for each value x. In the iid case, and more generally under  $\mathbb{P} = \mathbb{P}_{\pi}$  with  $X_0 \sim \pi$ , so the chain is stationary,

$$\mathbb{E}S_n(f) = n\mathbb{E}f(X_1)$$
$$= n\pi f,$$

where  $\pi f = \sum_{x} \pi(x) f(x)$  is a real number. Notice that the states  $X_n$  of the chain can be abstract, but we assume f to take on numerical values, so that we may discuss the expectation and variance of sums like  $S_n(f)$ . Continuing in the iid case  $P = \Pi$ , we have

$$\operatorname{Var}(S_n(f)) = n \operatorname{Var}(f(X_1)),$$

and  $Var(X) = \mathbb{E}(X^2) - \mathbb{E}(X)^2$  gives, in matrix notation:

$$\sigma^2(f) := \operatorname{Var}(X_1(f)) = \pi f^2 - (\pi f)^2$$

Then by the Central Limit Theorem for sums of iid random variables, provided  $\pi f^2 < \infty$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\frac{S_n(f) - n\pi f}{\sigma(f)\sqrt{n}} \le z\right) \to \Phi(z),$$

the standard normal CDF. So what about for a Markov chain?

#### 10.3.1 The Mean

Assuming now that  $(X_n)$  is an irreducible finite state Markov chain with  $X_0 \sim \lambda$ 

$$\mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(X_k) = \lambda \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n} P^k \right) f$$

$$= n\lambda \left( \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} P^k \right) f$$

$$\sim n \underbrace{\lambda \prod_{k=1}^{n} f}_{=\pi} f \text{, as } n \to \infty$$

Notice that the mean per step  $\pi f$  is the same as in the iid case. If  $\lambda = \pi$  the formula for the mean of  $S_n(f)$  is still exactly  $n\pi f$ , but for  $\lambda \neq \pi$  this formula only holds asymptotically in the limit as  $n \to \infty$  instead of exactly.

# 10.3.2 The Variance

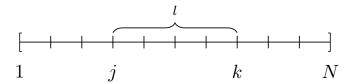
At least in the aperiodic case, because of the convergence in distribution of  $X_n$  to  $\pi$ , it is intuitively obvious that the behavior of  $\operatorname{Var} S_n(f)$  for large n can't depend much on the initial distribution  $\lambda$ . We certainly see this for the mean, and it holds here for the variance as well, even for periodic chains. So the most important case for variance computations is the stationary case with  $\lambda := \pi$ . Then we can compute

$$\operatorname{Var}_{\pi}(S_{n}(f)) = \operatorname{Var}_{\pi}(f(X_{1}) + f(X_{2}) + \dots + f(X_{n}))$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{n} \operatorname{Var}_{\pi}f(X_{k}) + 2 \sum_{1 \leq j < k \leq n} \operatorname{Cov}[f(X_{j}), f(X_{k})]$$

$$= n \operatorname{Var}_{\pi}f(X_{1}) + 2 \sum_{l=1}^{n-1} (n-l) \operatorname{Cov}[f(X_{0}), f(X_{l})]$$

because stationarity of the process implies  $Cov[f(X_j), f(X_k)] = Cov[f(X_0), f(X_{k-j})]$  and for  $1 \le l \le n-1$  there are n-l pairs  $1 \le j < k \le n$  with k-j=l.



Now we are interested in what happens for large n. We see that

$$\frac{\operatorname{Var}_{\pi}(S_n(f))}{n} = \operatorname{Var}_{\pi}f(X_1) + 2\sum_{l=1}^{n-1} \left(1 - \frac{l}{n}\right) \operatorname{Cov}\left[f(X_0), f(X_l)\right]$$

To simplify, assume that  $\pi f = 0$  which is the same as  $\mathbb{E}_{\pi} f(X_k) = 0$  because  $X_k \sim \pi$  under  $\mathbb{P}_{\pi}$ , the probability with the stationary measure. Then

$$\frac{\mathbb{V}ar_{\pi}(S_n(f))}{n} = \pi f^2 + 2\sum_{l=1}^{n-1} \left(1 - \frac{l}{n}\right) \mathbb{E}_{\pi} f(X_0) f(X_l),$$

where we get rid of the subtraction terms by our assumption. Now we ask how to compute  $\mathbb{E}_{\pi}[f(X_0)f(X_l)]$ , where we must respect the joint distribution between  $X_0$  and  $X_l$ , which involves  $P^l$ . Use Markov chain properties and condition on  $X_0$ :

$$\mathbb{E}_{\pi} [f(X_0)f(X_l)] = \mathbb{E}_{\pi} \left[ f(X_0)(\mathbb{E}_{\pi} f(X_l)|X_0) \right]$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{\pi} f(X_0)(P^l f)(X_0)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{\pi} \left( f \cdot P^l f \right)(X_0)$$

$$= \pi (f \cdot P^l f),$$

where  $(f \cdot g)(x) = f(x)g(x)$ ; in other words, not matrix multiplication of column vector times column vector, which does not make sense.

#### 10.3.3 The Central Limit Theorem

For f with  $\pi f = 0$  we have derived the following exact formula

$$\frac{\operatorname{Var}_{\pi}\left[S_{n}(f)\right]}{n} = \pi f^{2} + 2\sum_{l=1}^{n-1} \left(1 - \frac{l}{n}\right) \pi \left(f \cdot P^{l} f\right).$$

Now we would like to see what happens when n is large (as in the Central Limit Theorem). Let  $n \to \infty$ . Assume P is aperiodic, so that  $P^l \to \Pi$ , and use  $1 - \frac{l}{n} \uparrow 1$ . Then

$$\frac{\operatorname{Var}_{\pi}\left[S_{n}(f)\right]}{n} \xrightarrow{n \to \infty} \sigma^{2}(f) \tag{10.5}$$

where the asymptotic variance  $\sigma^2(f)$  per step of the chain can be evaluated from the limit of the exact formula above as

$$\sigma^{2}(f) = \pi f^{2} + 2\sum_{l=1}^{\infty} \pi \left( f \cdot P^{l} f \right)$$

$$= \pi f^{2} + 2\pi f \left( \sum_{l=1}^{\infty} P^{l} f \right)$$

$$= \pi f^{2} + 2\pi f \sum_{l=1}^{\infty} \left( P^{l} - \Pi \right) f \text{ because } \pi f = 0$$

$$= \pi f^{2} + 2\pi f (Z - I) f \text{ where } Z := \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (P - \Pi)^{l}$$

$$= \left[ 2\pi f \cdot Z f - \pi f^{2} \right].$$

To summarize, the fundamental matrix Z arises naturally in the formula for the limiting variance per unit time in the sum  $S_n(f)$  of values of a function f of a stationary Markov chain.

# **Central Limit Theorem for Markov Chains**

The CLT works for any irreducible and positive recurrent Markov chain and any f with  $\pi f^2 < \infty$  with this evaluation of the asymptotic mean and variance.

See Asmussen's text APQ [?] for a more careful statement and proof.

# 10.4 Further Applications of the Fundamental Matrix

The following material was not covered in lecture, but serves to review many of the basic properties of Markov chains, and provides further applications of the fundamental matrix of a recurrent Markov chain.

#### 10.4.1 Stopping times

First recall from the text, page 13, the definition of a stopping time T for a discrete time stochastic process  $(W_n) = (W_n, n = 0, 1, 2...)$  with countable state space. That is, T is a random variable with values in  $\{0, 1, 2, ..., \infty\}$ , such that for each n = 0, 1, 2, ... the event (T = n) is determined by the values of  $W_0, ..., W_n$ . Formally, the indicator function  $\mathbf{1}(T = n)$  is a function of  $(W_0, ..., W_n)$ :

$$\mathbf{1}(T=n) = f_n(W_0, \dots, W_n) \qquad (n=0, 1, 2, \dots)$$
(10.6)

for some  $\{0,1\}$ -valued function  $f_n$  of n+1 variables  $W_k \in S$  for  $0 \le k \le n$ . Because

$$1 - \mathbf{1}(T > n) = \mathbf{1}(T \le n) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \mathbf{1}(T = k) \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots)$$

equivalent condition are

$$\mathbf{1}(T \le n) = g_n(W_0, \dots, W_n) \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$
(10.7)

for some  $\{0,1\}$ -valued function  $g_n$  of the same variables, and

$$\mathbf{1}(T > n) = h_n(W_0, \dots, W_n) \qquad (n = 0, 1, 2, \dots)$$
(10.8)

for some  $\{0,1\}$ -valued function  $h_n$  of the same variables. Intuitively, for each n you can tell whether or not any of the events (T=n), (T>n) or  $(T \le n)$  has occurred just by looking at the variables  $W_0, \ldots, W_n$ . It is only ever necessary to check one of the above conditions (10.6) (10.7) (10.8) for each  $n=0,1,2,\ldots$ , because each of these conditions implies both the others by simple manipulation of indicator variables. Examples of stopping times T are the now familiar first hitting times  $T=V_A$ , allowing a hit at time 0, with

$$\mathbf{1}(V_A > n) = \prod_{k=0}^{n} \mathbf{1}(W_k \notin A) \qquad (n \ge 0)$$
 (10.9)

$$\mathbf{1}(V_A = n) = \mathbf{1}(W_n \in A) \prod_{k=1}^{n} \mathbf{1}(W_k \notin A) \qquad (n \ge 0).$$
 (10.10)

with the convention for n=0 in the product  $\prod_{k=1}^n$  that the empty product  $\prod_{k=1}^0 = 1$  (usual convention that an empty product equals 1, which corresponds by taking logs to the convention that an empty sum equals 0). Similarly, the first passage times  $T_A := \min\{n \geq 1 : W_n \in A\}$  are stopping times, with

$$\mathbf{1}(T_A > 0) = 1 \tag{10.11}$$

$$\mathbf{1}(T_A > n) = \prod_{k=1}^{n} \mathbf{1}(W_k \notin A) \qquad (n \ge 1)$$
 (10.12)

$$\mathbf{1}(T_A = 0) = 0 \tag{10.13}$$

$$\mathbf{1}(T_A = n) = \mathbf{1}(W_n \in A) \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} \mathbf{1}(W_k \notin A) \qquad (n \ge 1).$$
 (10.14)

Note that

- for both  $T = V_A$  and  $T = T_A$  the logical description of  $\mathbf{1}(T > n)$  as a product of indicators, corresponding to an intersection of events, is slightly simpler that the corresponding description of  $\mathbf{1}(T = n) = \mathbf{1}(T > n 1) \mathbf{1}(T > n)$ .
- the definition of a stopping time T relative to  $(W_n)$  does not involve any assumptions about the distribution of the process  $(W_n)$ .

Now let  $(W_n)$  be some process defined on a probability space with underlying probability measure  $\mathbb{P}$ , and let  $(X_n)$  be another process derived as  $X_n = x_n(W_0, \dots, W_n)$  for some function  $x_n$  of  $W_0, \dots, W_n$ . Common examples are

- sums and products,  $X_n = W_0 + \cdots + W_n$  and  $X_n = W_0 \cdots W_n$ .
- expansions of the state space to allow extra randomization:  $W_n = (X_n, Y_n)$  for some process  $(Y_n)$ .

Let P be a transition probability matrix on the countable state space of X. Say that  $(X_0, X_1, \ldots)$  is Markov with transition matrix P relative to the history of  $(W_n)$ , abbreviated Markov (P) relative to  $(W_n)$ , if

- $X_n = x_n(W_0, \dots, W_n)$  for some function  $x_n$  of  $W_0, \dots, W_n$
- for every  $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ , every choice of states x and y of the process X, and every event  $A_n$  with  $\mathbf{1}_{A_n} = f_n(W_0, \ldots, W_n)$  for some function  $f_n$  of  $W_0, \ldots, W_n$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(A_n \text{ and } X_n = x \text{ and } X_{n+1} = y) = \mathbb{P}(A_n \text{ and } X_n = x)P(x, y)$$
 (10.15)

which is equivalent by  $\mathbb{P}(B \mid A) = \mathbb{P}(AB)/\mathbb{P}(A)$  to

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{n+1} = y \mid X_n = x \text{ and } A_n) = P(x, y)$$
 (10.16)

for all choices of x and  $A_n$  with  $\mathbb{P}(X_n = x \text{ and } A_n) > 0$ .

Typically, (10.15) is used for computations. Taking  $\mathbf{1}_{A_n}$  to be a function of  $X_0, \ldots, X_n$  shows that if  $(X_n)$  is Markov (P) relative to the history of  $(W_n)$ , then  $(X_n)$  is Markov (P) relative to its own history. This is just the usual time-homogeneous Markov property of  $(X_n)$ . If  $(X_n)$  is Markov relative to a richer history  $(W_n)$  than just its own history, it means that given  $X_n = x$  any additional information in  $(W_0, \ldots, W_n)$ , beyond what is already encoded in  $(X_0, \ldots, X_n)$ , is of no use in predicting the next value  $X_{n+1}$ : the distribution of this variable given  $(X_n = x)$  is  $P(x, \cdot)$ , no matter what is known about  $(W_0, \ldots, W_n)$  besides that the event  $(X_n = x)$  has occurred.

Suppose now that T is a stopping time relative to the history  $(W_n)$  and that the process X is Markov (P) relative to  $(W_n)$ , under a probability measure  $\mathbb{P} = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  which assigns  $X_0$  some arbitrary initial distribution  $\lambda$ . Then (10.15) for  $A_n = (T = n)$  reads

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T=n \text{ and } X_n=x \text{ and } X_{n+1}=y) = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T=n \text{ and } X_n=x)P(x,y)$$
 (10.17)

so summing over  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  gives

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T < \infty \text{ and } X_T = x \text{ and } X_{T+1} = y) = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T < \infty \text{ and } X_T = x)P(x, y)$$
(10.18)

That is, for any initial distribution  $\lambda$  of  $X_0$ 

• under  $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  given  $T < \infty$  and  $X_T = x$  the distribution of  $X_{T+1}$  is  $P(x,\cdot)$ .

This iterates easily to give the Strong Markov Property:

• under  $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  given  $T < \infty$  and  $X_T = x$  the process  $(X_T, X_{T+1}, \cdots)$  has the same distribution as the original chain  $(X_0, X_1, \ldots)$  under  $\mathbb{P}_x(\cdot) := \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(\cdot \mid X_0 = x)$ .

This formulation of the strong Markov property is exactly as in Durrett's Theorem 1.2 on page 13, except that Durrett derives the result only for stopping times T of  $(X_n)$  itself. The above argument shows that the Strong Markov Property holds also for stopping times T of any process  $(W_n)$  such that  $(X_n)$  is Markov (P) relative to the history of  $(W_n)$ . Such stopping times can involve additional randomization beyond the chain  $(X_n)$ , and are sometimes called randomized stopping times of  $(X_n)$ . Examples of such stopping times involving extra randomization are

- T that is independent of  $(X_n)$ , taking  $W_n = (T, X_n)$ ;
- $T := \min\{n \geq 0 : X_n = Y\}$  for a state Y chosen independently of  $(X_n)$ , taking  $W_n = (X_n, Y)$ ;
- $T := \min\{n \geq 0 : p(X_n) \leq U_n\}$  for some function  $p : S \to [0,1]$  and  $(U_n)$  i.i.d. uniform [0,1] variables independent of  $(X_n)$ . Here  $W_n := (X_n, U_n)$ . So given you have not stopped before time n, after observing values of both  $X_k$  and  $U_k$  for  $0 \leq k < n$ , and  $X_n = x$  you stop at time n with probability p(x), according to whether or not the current uniform variable  $U_n \leq x$ .

So the Strong Markov Property holds in examples such as these involving extra randomization.

#### 10.4.2 Occupation Measures for Markov chains

Similarly to (10.19), the general formula (10.15) for  $A_n = (T > n)$  reads

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T > n \text{ and } X_n = y \text{ and } X_{n+1} = z) = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T > n \text{ and } X_n = y)P(y, z).$$
 (10.19)

Summing this over  $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$  and all states x gives

$$\mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T > n, X_{n+1} = z) = \sum_{y} \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \left( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T > n, X_n = y) \right) P(y, z). \quad (10.20)$$

For any initial probability distribution  $\lambda$ , and any stopping time T of some history  $(W_n)$  relative to which  $(X_n)$  is Markov with transition matrix P, define measures  $\lambda G_T$  and  $\lambda P_T$  on the state space of the chain as follows: for  $y \in S$ 

$$\lambda G_T(y) := \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T > n, X_n = y) = \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{T-1} 1(X_n = y)$$
(10.21)

$$\lambda P_T(y) := \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T = n, X_n = y) = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T < \infty, X_n = y). \tag{10.22}$$

Observe that

- the pre-T occupation measure  $\lambda G_T(\cdot)$  describes the expected numbers of hits of various states y counting only times n with  $0 \le n < T$ .
- $\lambda P_T(\cdot)$  is the distribution of  $X_T$  on the event  $T < \infty$ ; so  $\lambda P_T(\cdot)$  is a subprobability measure with total mass  $\lambda P_T \mathbf{1} = \mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T < \infty) \in [0, 1]$ .

For purposes of matrix operations, each of these measures on S should be treated as a row vector.

• for any non-negative function f with  $\lambda G_T|f| < \infty$ 

$$\lambda G_T f = \sum_{y \in S} \lambda G_T(y) f(y) = \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{T-1} f(X_n) \in [0, \infty]$$
 (10.23)

• In particular, for f = 1, the function with constant value 1, the total mass of  $\lambda G_T(\cdot)$  is

$$\lambda G_T \mathbf{1} = \sum_{y \in S} \lambda G_T(y) = \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} T \in [0, \infty]$$
 (10.24)

• If this expectation  $\mathbb{E}_{\lambda}T < \infty$ , then (10.23) holds with a finite expectation  $\lambda G_T f$  for every bounded f.

Let  $\delta_x$  be the row vector  $\delta_x(y) = \mathbf{1}(x=y)$  with mass 1 at x and mass 0 elsewhere. Let  $G_T(x,\cdot) := \delta_x G_T(\cdot)$  be the pre-T occupation measure and  $P_T(x,\cdot) := \delta_x P_T(x,\cdot)$  the distribution of  $X_T$  on  $(T < \infty)$  for a chain started in state x. Let  $G_T$  and  $P_T$  denote the  $S \times S$  matrices with these rows. As the notation suggests, and is justified by conditioning on  $X_0$ ,

$$\lambda G_T(\cdot) = \sum_x \lambda(x) G_T(x, \cdot) \text{ and } \lambda P_T(\cdot) = \sum_x \lambda(x) P_T(x, \cdot).$$
 (10.25)

Then (10.20) gives the following general occupation measure identity for any stopping time T of a Markov chain  $(X_n)$ , including randomized stopping times, as discussed above:

$$\lambda G_{T+1} = \lambda G_T + \lambda P_T = \lambda + \lambda G_T P. \tag{10.26}$$

This identity is just two different ways of evaluating the pre-(T+1) occupation measure  $\lambda G_{T+1}$ :

- firstly by peeling off the contribution of the last term in (10.21) for n=T on the event  $(T<\infty)$ , and
- secondly by peeling off the first term for n = 0, and evaluating the remaining terms by (10.20).

For every stopping time T of a Markov chain with transition probability matrix P, this identity relates the initial distribution  $\lambda$  of  $X_0$  and the pre-T occupation

measure  $\lambda G_T$  to the distribution  $\lambda P_T$  of  $X_T$ . The occupation measure identity can also be written more compactly as an identity of matrices:

$$G_{T+1} = G_T + P_T = I + G_T P (10.27)$$

where for each  $x \in S$  the identity of row x in (10.27) is the identity (10.26) for  $\lambda = \delta_x$ . As a simple example, if T = N has constant value  $N \ge 0$ , then (10.27) reduces to

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N} P^{n} = \left(\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} P^{n}\right) + P^{N} = I + \left(\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} P^{n}\right) P$$
 (10.28)

which is obviously true for any matrix P with well defined powers, not just for transition matrices.

Call a measure  $\mu$  on S locally finite if  $\mu(z)$  is finite for every  $z \in S$ . Provided the initial distribution  $\lambda$  and the stopping time T are such that the occupation measure  $\lambda G_T$  is locally finite, which is typically obvious by geometric bounds, the occupation measure identity (10.26) can be rearranged as

$$\lambda G_T(I - P) = \lambda - \lambda P_T. \tag{10.29}$$

You easily can check that this rearrangement of the occupation measure identity is justified in each of the following cases. These cases include several instances of (10.29) which have been discussed in previous lectures and in the text.

(a) The state space S is infinite, every state  $z \in S$  is transient, without any restriction on the stopping time  $T \in [0, \infty]$ . In particular  $T = \infty$  is allowed for such a chain. Then  $P_T = P_\infty$  is the zero matrix, and  $G_T = G_\infty$  with

$$G_{\infty} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P^n = (I - P)^{-1}$$

the Green matrix associated with P, as discussed in Lecture 9.

(b)  $T = V_A$ , the first hitting time of A, counting a hit at time n = 0, for any subset A of S such that  $\mathbb{P}_x(V_A < \infty) > 0$  for all  $x \notin A$ . Let  $Q_A(x,y) := P(x,y)\mathbf{1}(x \notin A, y \notin A)$  be the restriction of P to  $(S - A) \times (S - A)$ , and write simply I for the similarly restricted identity matrix. Then, as discussed in Lecture 9,

$$G_{V_A}(x,y) = \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Q_A^n\right)(x,y) = (I - Q_A)^{-1}(x,y) \text{ for } x \notin A \text{ and } y \notin A$$
(10.30)

and  $G_{V_A}(x,y) = 0$  else. The evaluation of rows of the pre- $V_A$  occupation matrix  $G_{V_A}$  was detailed in Lecture 9 for the fair Gambler's Ruin chain on  $S = \{0, 1, ..., N\}$  with  $A = \{0, N\}$ , using a the occupation measure identity (10.29) to argue that in this case the graph of the function  $y \mapsto G_{V_A}(x,y)$  is linear on each of the intervals [0,x] and [x,N], vanishing at 0 and N, with peak value  $G_{V_A}(x,x)$  which is 1 greater than the average of neighboring values  $\frac{1}{2}G_{V_A}(x,x-1) + \frac{1}{2}G_{V_A}(x,x+1)$ .

- (c)  $\lambda$  and T are such that  $\lambda G_T$  is locally finite, with  $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}(T < \infty) = 1$  and  $X_T \stackrel{d}{=} X_0$ . Then (10.29) becomes  $\lambda G_T(I - P) = 0$ , so  $\lambda G_T$  is a P-invariant measure.
- (d) In particular, if P is irreducible and recurrent,  $\lambda = \delta_x$  and  $T = T_x$  for any fixed state x, then and  $X_0 \stackrel{d}{=} X_{T_x}$ , so  $\mu_x(\cdot) := G_{T_x}(x, \cdot)$ , the occupation measure of a single x-block of the chain, gives a strictly positive, locally finite P-invariant measure:

$$\mu_x(\cdot) = \mu_x(\cdot)P \text{ with } 0 < \mu_x(y) < \infty \qquad (y \in S).$$
 (10.31)

This is Durrett Theorem 1.24 on page 48. The above derivation of this result follows essentially the same steps as Durrett's proof.

## 10.4.3 Positive recurrent chains: the ergodic theorem

Focusing now on the case when P is irreducible and positive recurrent, formula (10.31) gives a different invariant measure  $\mu_x(\cdot)$  for each  $x \in S$ . Normalizing  $\mu_x(\cdot)$  by its total mass

$$m_{xx} := \mu_x(\cdot)\mathbf{1} = \mathbb{E}_x T_x$$

gives a stationary probability measure  $\pi$  for P. It appears at first as if this stationary probability measure  $\pi_x(\cdot) = \mu_x(\cdot)/m_{xx}$  for P might depend on the choice of reference state x. But it does not, for it can be shown in many ways that there can be at most one invariant probability measure for an irreducible transition matrix P. Hence the basic formula

$$\pi(x) = \frac{1}{m_{xx}} \qquad (x \in S)$$
 (10.32)

for the unique stationary probability measure  $\pi$  for an irreducible and positive recurrent chain. In particular, this uniqueness of  $\pi$  and (10.32) are consequences of the following *ergodic theorem* for an irreducible chain (Durrett's Theorem 1.22): If  $\pi$  is any stationary probability measure for an irreducible P, then for every initial distribution  $\lambda$  of  $X_0$ , and every function f with  $\pi |f| < \infty$ , there is the convergence

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} f(X_k) \to \pi f := \sum_{y} \pi(y) f(y) \text{ as } n \to \infty.$$
 (10.33)

In particular, for f(y) the indicator function  $f_x(y) = \mathbf{1}(y=x)$ , this states that the long run limiting relative frequency of times the chain hits state x is  $\pi f_x = \pi(x)$ . Technically, the convergence (10.33) holds almost surely, meaning with  $\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}$  probability one, no matter what the intial distribution  $\lambda$ . A complete formulation and proof of this result is beyond the scope of this course. But this notion of almost sure convergence implies what is called convergence in probability: for every initial distribution  $\lambda$ 

$$\mathbb{P}_{\lambda}\left(\left|\frac{1}{n}\sum_{k=1}^{n}f(X_{k})-\pi f\right|>\epsilon\right)\to 0 \qquad (\forall \epsilon>0). \tag{10.34}$$

If S is finite, and more generally if  $\pi f^2 < \infty$ , this can be proved, as in the case of i.i.d.  $X_i$ , when  $P = \Pi := \mathbf{1}\pi$  is the transition matrix with all rows equal to  $\pi$ , by

bounding the variance, as discussed earlier, and using Chebychev's inequality, From either kind of convergence of averages of  $f(X_k)$  over the path of the Markov chain, granted that the limiting average value is a constant  $\pi f$ , this constant is obviously unique. Hence the uniqueness of  $\pi$ . To summarize: for an irreducible transition matrix P with countable state space S, the following conditions are equivalent:

- $m_{xx} < \infty$  for some (hence all )  $x \in S$ ;
- P has an invariant measure  $\mu$  with  $\mu(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x \in S$  and  $0 < \mu 1 < \infty$ ;
- P has unique invariant probability measure  $\pi(x) = 1/m_{xx}$ .

Then the transition matrix P, or the associated Markov chain, is called *positive* recurrent, (10.33) and (10.34) imply

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} P^k \to \Pi := \mathbf{1}\pi \text{ as } n \to \infty.$$
 (10.35)

If P is aperiodic, then (10.35) can be strengthened (Durrett Theorem 1.23 on page 52) to

$$P^n \to \Pi \text{ as } n \to \infty$$
 (10.36)

In both (10.35) and (10.36), and other formulas involving limits of matrices in this course, the meaning of convergence is that each entry of the matrix on the left converges to the corresponding entry of the matrix in the right. For transition matrices on both sides, as in (10.35) and (10.36), the rows on both sides are probability measures, meaning the entries are non-negative with row sums 1. Convergence of entries of a sequence of transition matrices then implies convergence of each row of probability measures in the metric of total variation distance between probability measures. For instance, in (10.36), for each initial state x,

$$\sum_{y} |P^{n}(x,y) - \pi(y)| \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty$$
 (10.37)

as in the last estimate in Durrett's proof of (10.36) on page 53. This implies things like

$$\mathbb{E}_x f(X_n) = (P^n f)(x) = \sum_y P^n(x, y) f(y) \to \pi f \text{ as } n \to \infty$$
 (10.38)

for every bounded function f, and that this convergence holds uniformly over all f with  $|f(x)| \leq b$  for any finite bound b.

#### 10.4.4 Occupation measures for recurrent chains

Suppose now that the transition matrix P is irreducible and recurrent. For any non-empty set of states  $A \subseteq S$  in the state space S let  $T_A := \min\{n \ge 1 : X_n \in A\}$  be the first passage time to A. Recurrence of the chain implies  $\mathbb{P}_x(T_A < \infty) = 1$  for all  $x \in S$ . Let  $G_A(x,\cdot)$  denote the pre- $T_A$  occupation measure starting from state x. A fairly complete analysis of the process  $(X_n, 0 \le n \le T_A)$ , with initial fixed value  $x \notin A$  and final random value  $X_{T_A} \in A$  is obtained by consideration of the pre- $T_A$  occupation matrix  $G_A$  with rows  $G_A(x,\cdot)$ . Observe that

- if  $x \notin A$  then  $G_A(x,y) = 0$  for  $y \in A$ , because the pre- $T_A$  occuptation measure only counts hits on A strictly before time  $T_A$ .
- these rows  $G_A(x,\cdot)$  for  $x \notin A$  are therefore completely determined by the restriction of the matrix  $G_A$  to  $(S-A) \times (S-A)$ , as displayed in (10.30), which is just the inverse of the restriction  $I-Q_A$  of I-P to  $(S-A) \times (S-A)$ .
- if  $a \in A$  then  $G_A(a, y) = \mathbf{1}(a = y)$  for  $y \in A$ , since the only possible hit of y strictly before  $T_A$  is a hit at time 0, and conditioning on  $X_1$  gives

$$G_A(a,y) = \mathbf{1}(a=y) + \mathbf{1}(y \notin A) \sum_{x \notin A} P(a,x)G_A(x,y) \qquad (a \in A)$$
 (10.39)

So the rows  $G_A(a,\cdot)$  for  $a \in A$  are easily determined from the rows  $G_A(x,\cdot)$  for  $x \notin A$ .

Consequently, to compute the entire pre- $T_A$  occupation matrix  $G_A$  for any non-empty subset A of states of a recurrent Markov chain, the main task is to compute the restriction of  $G_A$  to  $(S-A)\times (S-A)$  by inverting the restriction of I-P to  $(S-A)\times (S-A)$  matrix  $(I-Q_A)$ . Observe that if

$$V_A := \min\{n \ge 0 : X_n \in A\} = T_A \mathbf{1}(X_0 \notin A)$$

then

$$\mathbb{P}_x(T_A = V_A) = 1 \qquad (x \notin A).$$

So for initial states  $x \notin A$  the pre-T occupation measures  $G_T(x, \cdot)$  are identical for  $T = T_A$  and  $T = V_A$ :

$$G_A(x,\cdot) := G_{T_A}(x,\cdot) = G_{V_A}(x,\cdot) \qquad (x \notin A).$$

However, for  $x = a \in A$ , instead of (10.39) there is the trivial evaluation  $G_{V_A}(a, \cdot) = 0$ , which is sometimes convenient as a boundary condition. For instance, this condition fits well with the equations satisfied by the function

$$m_A(x) := \mathbb{E}_x V_A = \begin{cases} 0, & x \in A \\ \mathbb{E}_x T_A = \sum_{y \in S} G_A(x, y) = G_A(x, \cdot) \mathbf{1}, & x \notin A. \end{cases}$$

If P is positive recurrent, then  $m_A(x) < \infty$  for all x. By conditioning on  $X_1$ , the function  $m(x) = m_A(x)$ , regarded as a column vector indexed by states  $x \in S$ , solves the system of equations

$$m(x) = 1 + \sum_{y \in S} P(x, y) m(y)$$
 with  $m(a) = 0$  for  $a \in A$ . (10.40)

According to Theorem 1.29 on page 62 of the text, if S - A is finite, this system of equations has unique solution  $m(x) = m_A(x)$ . With the present assumption that P is irreducible and positive recurrent, this uniqueness can also be shown if S - A is

infinite. Once this mean function  $m_A(x)$  is found for starting states  $x \notin A$ , for a starting state  $a \in A$  the mean first return time to A is found, either by summing (10.39) over  $y \in S$ , or by conditioning on  $X_1$ :

$$\mathbb{E}_a T_A = 1 + \sum_{x \notin A} P(a, x) m_A(x) \qquad (a \in A).$$
 (10.41)

Starting from any state  $X_0 = x$ , as well as the mean first passage times  $\mathbb{E}_x T_A$ , the distributions and moments of many other functions of the path  $(X_n, 0 \le n \le T_A)$  are easily expressed in terms of the pre- $T_A$  occupation matrix  $G_A$ , using consequences of the Strong Markov Property. Consider for instance, the random count of hits on y before  $T_A$ 

$$N_{yA} := \sum_{n=0}^{T_A - 1} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y)$$

whose mean given  $X_0 = x$  is  $\mathbb{E}_x N_{yA} = G_A(x, y)$ . If  $y \in A$  this count is just the constant random variable  $\mathbf{1}(x = y)$ , either 1 or 0 depending on the starting state x. For  $y \notin A$  let

$$p_{xyA} := \mathbb{P}_x(N_{yA} > 0) = \frac{G_A(x, y)}{G_A(y, y)}$$

be the probability starting from x of reaching y before  $T_A$ , where the second equality is due to the Strong Markov Property. Then  $N_{yA}$  has the modified geometric distribution

$$\mathbb{P}_x(N_{yA} = 0) = 1 - p_{xyA} \tag{10.42}$$

$$\mathbb{P}_x(N_{yA} = n) = p_{xyA}(1 - e_{yA})^{n-1}e_{yA} \qquad (n = 1, 2, \ldots).$$
 (10.43)

where the escape probability

$$e_{yA} = \mathbb{P}_y(N_{yA} = 1) = \mathbb{P}_y(T_A < T_y) = \frac{1}{G_A(y, y)}$$

is determined by the mean  $G_A(y, y)$  of the  $\mathbb{P}_y$  distribution of  $N_{yA}$ , which is geometric  $(e_{yA})$  on  $\{1, 2, \ldots\}$ . Thus for  $y \notin A$ , due to the Strong Markov Property

• for each starting state x with  $p_{xyA} > 0$  the  $\mathbb{P}_x$  distribution of  $N_{yA}$  given  $(N_{yA} > 0)$  does not depend on x, and is identical to the  $\mathbb{P}_y$  distribution of  $N_{yA}$  which is geometric  $(e_{yA})$  on  $\{1, 2, \ldots\}$ .

These formulas for the distribution of  $N_{yA}$  starting from varous states x are just variations of the results presented in Durrett's text for  $T = \infty$  instead of  $T = T_A$  in formula (1.5) on page 18 and Lemma 1.11 on page 19. These formulas show that the path of a recurrent Markov chain stopped when it first hits some set of states A is full of counting variables  $N_{yA}$  with modified geometric distributions, whose parameters can be read from the pre- $T_A$  occupation matrix  $G_A$ .

This analysis is of particular interest when  $A = \{a\}$  for a single state a. Then the pre- $T_a$  occupation matrix

$$G_a(x,y) = \mathbb{E}_x N_{ya} = \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{k=0}^{T_a - 1} \mathbf{1}(X_n = y)$$
 (10.44)

gives the expected number of hits on y before  $T_a$ , starting from any state x. However, if there are for instance a finite number N of states, for each target state a a different  $(N-1)\times (N-1)$  submatrix of I-P must be inverted to obtain the matrix  $G_a$ . Or if it is desired to obtain the full matrix of mean first passage times  $(m_{xa}, x, a \in S)$ , a corresponding system of N-1 linear equations (10.40) must be solved to obtain the  $m_{xa}$  for  $x \neq a$ , and thence  $m_{aa} = 1 + \sum_{x \neq a} P(a, x) m_{xa}$ . But to do this for all states  $a \in S$  involves repeating this computational process N times over.

#### 10.4.5 The fundamental matrix of a positive recurrent chain

There is a much more efficient way to evaluate all the Green matrices  $G_a(x, y)$  and first passage moments  $m_{xa} = G_a(x, \cdot)\mathbf{1}$  of a positive recurrent Markov chain with transition matrix P. This involves the following three step process:

- Step 1. Find the invariant probability vector  $\pi$ . This can be done more or less quickly, depending on the structure of P. Before getting into linear algebra, it is best to first try the shortcuts for this:
  - check the detailed balance equations to see if there is a reversible equilibrium, as if there is it will be easy to find.
  - check if P is doubly stochastic, in which case the uniform distribution is invariant.
  - check if there is some family of initial distributions  $\lambda$  for which it is particularly easy to find  $\lambda P$ , and look for  $\pi$  amongst these initial distributions (as in Problem 2 of Worksheet 5).

Worst case, if none of these shortcuts works,

- either solve the system of equations  $\pi P = \pi$  and  $\pi \mathbf{1} = 1$  by linear algebra,
- or compute the pre- $T_a$  occupation kernel  $G_a$  for some fixed state a by linear algebra, and evaluate  $\pi(x) = G_a(a, x)/G_a(a, \cdot)\mathbf{1}$ .
- Step 2. Set  $\Pi := \mathbf{1}\pi$ , and invert  $I P + \Pi$  to obtain the fundamental matrix

$$Z := (I - P + \Pi)^{-1} \tag{10.45}$$

• Step 3. Read the Green matrices and first passage moments from the simple formulas for all these quantities in terms of entries of Z, as detailed below.

The method of Steps 2 amd 3 will now be motivated by studying the relation between of the matrix  $I - P + \Pi$  and the Green matrix  $G_a$  for some arbitrary fixed target state a, assuming for simplicity that the state space S is finite. But it is known that all the formulas obtained in this case are valid for any irreducible and positive recurrent chain, just with finite sums replaced by infinite sums, with some care to ensure the infinite sums are convergent. Further motivation for the study of the fundamental matrix Z derived from an irreducible positive recurrent Markov matrix P is provided by the fact that Z is involved in evaluating the variance of the sum

 $\sum_{k=1}^{n} f(X_k)$  appearing in the ergodic theorem (10.33), which is needed to provide normal approximations to the distribution of this sum for large n. Here is a more formal statement of Step 2.

**Theorem 1** (Existence of the fundamental matrix Z). Let P be an irreducible transition matrix with finite state space S. Let I be the  $S \times S$  identity matrix, let  $\pi$  with

$$\pi P = \pi \ and \ \pi \mathbf{1} = 1$$

be the unique invariant probability measure for P, and let  $\Pi := \mathbf{1}\pi$  be the  $S \times S$  transition matrix with all rows equal to  $\Pi$ . Then

1. The matrix  $I - P + \Pi$  is invertible, with inverse Z that is uniquely determined by either one of the two matrix equations

$$(I - P + \Pi)Z = I = Z(I - P + \Pi)$$
(10.46)

2. This matrix Z shares with P the basic properties

$$\pi Z = \pi, \qquad Z \mathbf{1} = \mathbf{1}, \qquad hence \qquad \Pi Z = Z \Pi = \Pi$$
 (10.47)

3. There is the identity  $(I-P)^n = P^n - I$  for  $n \ge 1$ , but not for n = 0. If P is aperiodic, then

$$Z = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (P - I)^n = I + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (P^n - \Pi)$$
 (10.48)

meaning that if  $Z_N := \sum_{n=0}^N (I - P)^n$  is the matrix of partial sums up to N, then  $Z(x,y) = \lim_{N \to \infty} Z_N(x,y)$  for all  $x, y \in S$ .

4. If P is periodic, the parital sums  $Z_N$  of the series (10.48) series are not convergent. But whatever the period of P, the sum can be evaluated by Abel's method:

$$Z = \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (I - P)^n s^n = I + \lim_{s \uparrow 1} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (P^n - \Pi) s^n$$
 (10.49)

*Proof.* By linear algebra, a square matrix M is invertible iff there is no non-trivial linear relation among its column vectors: that is, the equation Mg = 0 for an unknown column vector g has unique solution g = 0. So to establish the existence of Z it is enough to show that the equation

$$(I - P + \Pi)q = 0$$

for an unknown column vector g implies g=0. Pre-multiply this equation by the row vector  $\pi$  to see it implies  $\pi g=0$ , hence  $\Pi g=0$ , and (I-P)g=0. So g is a P-harmonic column vector with

$$g = Pg = P^n g \qquad (n = 1, 2, \ldots)$$

But for an irreducible P with finite state space, every P-harmonic g is constant:  $g = m\mathbf{1}$  for some scalar multiplier m, and  $\pi g = 0$  forces m = 0, hence g = 0. To confirm that  $g = m\mathbf{1}$  for some m, let  $m := \min_{y \in S} g(y)$  and let x be a state with g(x) = m. Then

$$0 = g(x) - m = (P^{n}[g - m\mathbf{1}])(x) = \sum_{y} P^{n}(x, y)[g(y) - m] \ge 0.$$

Hence  $P^n(x,y)[g(y)-m]=0$  for every state y. By irreducibility of P, there is an n such that  $P^n(x,y)>0$ , hence g(y)=m. So  $g=m\mathbf{1}$ . This proves the first assertion that  $I-P+\Pi$  is invertible. The remaining assertions are then easily checked, using  $\Pi P=P\Pi=\Pi$  to show that any finite product of factors P and  $\Pi$  containing at least one  $\Pi$  reduces to  $\Pi$ , and hence  $(P-I)^n=P^n-\Pi$  for  $n\geq 1$  by using the binomial expansion of  $0=(1-1)^n$  to identify the coefficient of  $\Pi$  in the expansion of  $(P-I)^n$ . In the aperiodic case, the difference  $|(P^n-\Pi)(x,y)|$  is bounded by some constant time  $\rho^n$  with  $0<\rho<1$  by the estimate in Durrett's proof of (10.36) on page 53. This implies the series in (10.48) is absolutely convergent, hence that Z defined by (10.48) satisfies (10.46). The discussion of the Abel sum (10.49) in the periodic case just requires a bit more analysis.

**Corollary 1.1** (Solution of Poisson equations). For a finite state irreducible transition probability matrix P, with  $\Pi = \pi \mathbf{1}$  and  $Z = (I - P + \Pi)^{-1}$  as above,

(a) [Poisson equation for a column vector] For each given column vector f

there exists a solution q of 
$$(I - P)q = f$$
  $\iff$   $\pi f = 0$  (10.50)

in which case, for each scalar m

the unique solution 
$$g$$
 of  $(I - P)g = f$  and  $\pi g = m$  is  $g = Zf + m\mathbf{1}$ .

(10.51)

(b) [Poisson equation for a row vector] For each given row vector  $\delta$ 

there exists a solution 
$$\mu$$
 of  $\mu(I-P) = \delta$   $\iff$   $\delta \mathbf{1} = 0$  (10.52)

in which case, for each scalar m

the unique solution 
$$\mu$$
 of  $\mu(I-P) = \delta$  and  $\mu \mathbf{1} = m$  is  $\mu = \delta Z + m\pi$ . (10.53)

*Proof.* Dealing with the case of row vectors, suppose that  $\mu$  is a solution of the Poisson equation  $\mu(I-P)=\delta$  for some given vector  $\delta$ . Post-multiply the Poisson equation by **1** to see that  $\delta$ **1** = 0 is necessary for existence of any solution  $\mu$ . Continuing to assume that  $\mu(I-P)=\delta$ , let  $m:=\mu$ **1**, so  $(\mu-m\pi)\Pi=0$  and the Poisson equation gives  $(\mu-m\pi)(I-P)=\delta$ . Add these two equations to get

$$(\mu - m\pi)(I - P + \Pi) = \delta$$
 hence  $\mu - m\pi = \delta Z$ 

by post-multiplication by  $(I - P + \Pi)^{-1} = Z$ . Finally, these steps are easily reversed to show for every  $\delta$  with  $\delta \mathbf{1} = 0$  and every scalar m that  $\mu := \delta Z + m\pi$  solves  $\mu(I - P) = \delta$  and  $\mu \mathbf{1} = m$ . The corresponding result for column vectors is obtained by a dual argument, using pre-multiplication of the Poisson equation (I - P)g = f by  $\pi$  to obtain the necessary condition  $\pi f = 0$ .

Note the striking duality exposed by the above analysis of the two Poisson equations

$$(1-P)g = f$$
 and  $\mu(I-P) = \delta$ 

according to whether the transition matrix P is regarded as an operator on the left of column vectors g or on the right of row vectors  $\mu$ . For each action of P, the Poisson equation with 0 on the right side is solved by any P-invariant vector:

- the only P-invariant column vectors are the constant function  $g = m\mathbf{1}$  for some scalar m;
- the only P-invariant row vectors are scalar multiples  $\mu = m\pi$  of the invariant probability  $\pi$ .

In each case, the solution of the Poisson equation is clearly unique only up to addition of P-invariant vector, that is some multiple of  $\mathbf{1}$  or of  $\pi$  as the case may be. The key points are that for each given column vector f or row vector  $\delta$  on the right side of the Poisson equation, subject to the obvious necessary condition for existence of a solution (that is  $\pi f = 0$  or  $\delta \mathbf{1} = 0$ ),

- a specific solution of the Poisson equation is obtained as either Zf or  $\delta Z$ ;
- the most general solution of the Poisson equation is then either  $Zf + m\mathbf{1}$  or  $\delta Z + m\pi$ , as the case may be.

Corollary 1.2 (Occupation measures derived from the fundamental matrix). For an irreducible Markov chain with transition matrix P with invariant probability  $\pi$  and fundamental matrix  $Z = (I - P + \Pi)^{-1}$ , let T be any randomized stopping time of the chain, and for a given initial distribution  $\lambda$  let  $\lambda G_T$  be the pre-T occupation measure

$$\lambda G_T(z) := \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} \sum_{n=0}^{T-1} 1(X_n = z) \qquad (z \in S)$$
 (10.54)

regarded as a row vector, with total mass  $\lambda G_T \mathbf{1} = \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} T$ . Assuming  $\mathbb{E}_{\lambda} T < \infty$ , the occupation measure  $\lambda G_T$  is related to the initial distribution  $\lambda$  and the final distribution  $\lambda_T$  of  $X_T$  by the Poisson equation

$$\lambda G_T(I - P) = \lambda - \lambda_T \tag{10.55}$$

whose solution is

$$\lambda G_T = (\lambda - \lambda_T)Z + (\mathbb{E}_{\lambda}T)\pi \tag{10.56}$$

*Proof.* The Poisson equation (10.55) for  $\lambda G_T$  is read from the general occupation measure identity (10.26), using  $\mathbb{E}_{\lambda}T < \infty$  to justify finiteness of the measure  $\lambda G_T$ . Then (10.56) is read from the general form (10.53) of the solution of the Poisson equation.

For the stopping time  $T=T_y:=\min\{n\geq 1: X_n=y\}$  this formula (10.56) establishes a close connection between the fundamental matrix Z and the pre- $T_y$  occupation matrix  $G_y$  with (x,z) entry

$$G_y(x,z) := \mathbb{E}_x N_{zy} \text{ where } N_{zy} := \sum_{n=0}^{T_y-1} \mathbf{1}(X_n = z)$$

is the number of hits on z strictly before  $T_y$ , counting a hit at time n = 0 if x = z. Abbreviate

$$m_{xy} := \mathbb{E}_x T_y = \sum_z G_y(x,z) = G_y(x,\cdot) \mathbf{1}$$

for the mean first passage time from x to y, and

$$m_{\lambda y} := \mathbb{E}_{\lambda} T_y = \sum_{x} \lambda(x) m_{xy} = \sum_{z} (\lambda G_y)(z) = \lambda G_y \mathbf{1}$$

for the mean first passage time to state y starting from  $X_0 \sim \lambda$ . Formula (10.56) in this case reads

$$\lambda G_y(\cdot) = \lambda Z(\cdot) - Z(y, \cdot) + m_{\lambda y} \pi(\cdot) \tag{10.57}$$

The choice of the stationary initial distribution  $\lambda = \pi$  is of special interest. The feature of Z noted in (10.47) that  $\pi Z = \pi$  makes (10.57) for  $\lambda = \pi$  simplify to

$$\pi G_y(\cdot) = -Z(y, \cdot) + (1 + m_{\pi y})\pi(\cdot) \tag{10.58}$$

which rearranges as

$$Z(y,\cdot) = (1 + \pi G_y \mathbf{1})\pi(\cdot) - \pi G_y(\cdot). \tag{10.59}$$

Thus the fundamental matrix  $Z = (I - P + \Pi)^{-1}$  can be described in probabilistic terms as follows:

• row y of Z is a scalar multiple  $m\pi$  of the stationary probability  $\pi$ , minus the pre- $T_y$  occupation measure for the chain started with  $X_0 \sim \pi$ , where  $m = 1 + \mathbb{E}_{\pi} T_y = 1 + \pi G_y \mathbf{1}$  is determined by the row sum  $Z(y, \cdot) \mathbf{1} = 1$ .

In particular, evaluating the row vector (10.59) at y gives the diagonal entries of the fundamental matrix Z in terms of  $\pi$  and mean first moments:

$$Z(y,y) = (\mathbb{E}_{\pi} T_y)\pi(y) = \sum_{x} \pi(x) m_{xy} \pi(y) = \frac{\mathbb{E}_y T_y^2 + m_{yy}}{2m_{yy}^2}$$
(10.60)

where  $m_{yy} = \mathbb{E}_y T_y$  and the last equality is due to Kac's identity (Problem 3 of Worksheet 5)

$$\mathbb{P}_{\pi}(T_{y} = n) = \mathbb{P}_{y}(T_{y} \ge n)/m_{yy} \qquad (n = 1, 2, \dots)$$
(10.61)

which shows how the distribution of  $T_y$  for  $X_0 \sim \pi$  determines the distribution of  $T_y$  given  $X_0 = y$  and vice versa. As a checks on these formulas: summing (10.61) over n gives 1 on the left side by the assumed recurrence of the chain, and 1 on the right side by the tail sum formula for  $\mathbb{E}_y T_y$ . Also, (10.60) can be checked by renewal theory, using the infinite sum (10.48) and probability generating functions, as indicated in Problem 5 of Worksheet 5.

Similarly, taking  $\lambda = \delta_x$  in (10.57) gives

$$Z(x,y) - Z(y,y) = \mathbf{1}(x=y) - m_{xy}\pi(y). \tag{10.62}$$

Hence, by adding (10.60) and (10.63), there is a general formula for entries of Z in terms of mean first passage times:

$$Z(x,y) = \mathbf{1}(x=y) + (m_{\pi y} - m_{xy})\pi(y). \tag{10.63}$$

The case x = y of (10.63) reduces to (10.60) by  $\pi(x) = 1/m_{xx}$ , which allows the diagonal mean first passage times  $m_{xx}$  to be determined from  $\pi$ . Subtract (10.63) from (10.60) to see that similarly, all the off diagonal mean first passage times can be read from the fundamental matrix Z and  $\pi$ :

$$m_{xy} = \frac{Z(y,y) - Z(x,y)}{\pi(y)}$$
  $(x \neq y)$  (10.64)

As a check on these formulas, the simple special case that P governs a sequence of i.i.d. random variables with distribution  $\pi$  corresponds to

$$P = \Pi \iff Z = I \iff m_{xy} = m_{yy} \text{ for all } x.$$
 (10.65)

# 10.4.6 Exercises.

1. Deduce that

$$G_y(x,z) = (m_{xy} - m_{xz}1(x \neq z) + m_{yz}1(y \neq z))\pi(z).$$
 (10.66)

This can be rearranged as

$$m_{xy} + m_{yz}1(y \neq z) = G_y(x, z)m_{zz} + m_{xz}1(x \neq z)$$
 (10.67)

which is just two different ways of calculating  $\mathbb{E}_x T_{yz}$  where  $T_{yz}$  is the first visit to z at or after time  $T_y$ . See Chapter 2 of the Aldous-Fill book https://www.stat.berkeley.edu/users/aldous/RWG/book.html for further discussion.

2. Check directly as follows, without discussion of the Poisson equation, that Z defined by (10.63) is the inverse of  $I - P + \Pi$ . Recall that by a first step analysis, for all pairs of states x and z, including x = z,

$$m_{xz} = 1 + \sum_{y \neq z} P(x, y) m_{yz}$$
 (10.68)

For Z defined by (10.63), use (10.68) to evaluate the (PZ)(x, z), and show that  $PZ = Z - I + \Pi$ . Check also that  $\Pi Z = \Pi$ , and hence that  $Z(I - P + \Pi) = I$ .

10.5 References

- 3. Evaluate all entries of Z explicitly for a two state chain.
- 4. Evaluate one row of Z explicitly for a random walk on three states in a circle, with probabilities p and q for clockwise and anticlockwise steps, with p + q = 1. How can the other rows of Z be derived from this row with no further calculation?
- 5. (Asmussen Proposition 7.1 [?]) Show that for each f with  $\pi f = 0$  the unique solution g of the Poisson equation (I P)g = f with g(y) = 0 is

$$g(x) = \delta_x G_y f = \mathbb{E}_x \sum_{n=0}^{T_y - 1} f(X_n)$$

6. Is there a corresponding description of the solution of  $\mu(I-P) = \delta$  with  $\delta \mathbf{1} = 1$  and  $\delta(y) = 0$ ?

#### 10.5 References

The material on pre-T occupation measures is based on my Occupation measures for Markov chains Adv. Appl. Probab. 9, 69-86 (1977). See Asmussen's Applied probability and queues (§I.7[?]) and Chapter 2 of the Aldous-Fill book https://www.stat.berkeley.edu/users/aldous/RWG/book.html for further discussion of the fundamental matrix Z. Beware that Aldous-Fill use the notation Z for  $Z - \Pi$ , and  $T_x^+$  for our  $T_x$  and  $T_x$  for our  $V_x$ .

# LECTURE 11

# Poisson Processes, Part 1

### 11.1 Introduction: Poisson Processes

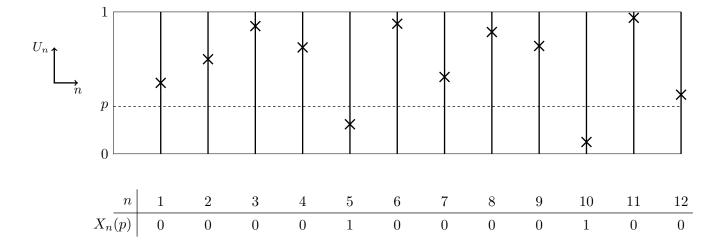
We'll do a quick review of basic properties of the Poisson distribution. Recall that we have the **Binomial** (n, p) distribution of

$$S_n(p) := X_1(p) + X_2(p) + \dots + X_n(p),$$

where the  $X_i(p)$  are independent **Bernoulli**(p) variables. We have a nice construction of all these variables at once. Take  $U_1, U_2, \ldots$  iid over interval [0, 1] and let

$$X_n(p) := \mathbf{1}\{U_n \le p\}$$

Observe



Now we look at when  $n \to \infty$ , with  $p \downarrow 0$ , so that  $np \equiv \mu$  is fixed. In terms of the above construction, we are simply lowering the dotted line at level p, and pushing

 $n = \mu/p$  to infinity (through integer values, or round  $\mu/p$  to the nearest integer, it makes no difference in the limit), to keep the expected number of points  $\times$  below the bar in n trials to equal  $\mu$ , either exactly for simplicity as in the following calculations, or approximately enough so that  $np \to \mu$  as both  $n \to \infty$  and  $p \downarrow 0$ . Working with  $np \equiv \mu$  exactly

$$\mathbb{E}S_n(p) = np \equiv \mu$$

so that

$$\mathbb{P}(S_n(p) = k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k}$$

$$= \frac{(n)_{k\downarrow}}{k!} \left(\frac{\mu}{n}\right)^k \left(1 - \frac{\mu}{n}\right)^{n-k}$$

$$\to e^{-\mu} \frac{\mu^k}{k!} \text{ as } n \to \infty \text{ and } p \downarrow 0$$

This is how the Poisson distribution arises as the limit of binomial distributions with large n and small p. A more careful argument (see text Theorem 2.9 on page 104) shows that for any collection of independent indicator variables  $X_1, \ldots, X_n$  with  $p_k = \mathbb{P}(X_k = 1)$  with sum  $S_n$  so  $\mathbb{E}S_n = p_1 + \cdots + p_n\mu$ , the **Poisson**  $(\mu)$  distribution will be a good approximation to the distribution of  $S_n$  whenever  $\mu(\max_k p_k)$  is small. In fact the total variation distance between this distribution of  $S_n$  (depending on  $p_1, \ldots, p_n$ ) and **Poisson**  $(\mu)$  is at most  $\mu(\max_k p_k)$ , which for any fixed  $\mu$  is small provided all the  $p_k$  are sufficiently small. Now when  $\mu \geq 0$ , let  $N_\mu$  or  $N(\mu)$  denote a random variable with this **Poisson**  $(\mu)$  limit law

$$\mathbb{P}(N_{\mu} = k) = e^{-\mu} \frac{\mu^{k}}{k!} \quad k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

Some basics

$$\mathbb{E}N_{\mu} = \mu$$
 and  $\operatorname{Var}(N_{\mu}) = \mu$ 

Notice that in the **Binomial** (n, p) setup

$$Var(S_n(p)) = np(1-p) = \mu(1-p) \to \mu$$

as  $p \downarrow 0$ . So the variance for Poisson is the limit of binomial variances, as should be expected. You should check these moment formulas by summation. Additionally, by probability generating functions, we have

$$G_{N(\mu)}(z) := \mathbb{E}z^{N(\mu)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^n e^{-\mu} \frac{\mu^n}{n!} = e^{-\mu} e^{\mu z} = e^{-\mu(1-z)}$$

Take the derivatives  $\frac{d}{dz}$ ,  $\frac{d^2}{dz^2}$  at z=1. Gives us  $\mathbb{E}N_{\mu}$  and  $\mathbb{E}N_{\mu}(N_{\mu}-1)$ , hence the formula for variance.

**Exercise** There is a pretty formula for  $\mathbb{E}\binom{N_{\mu}}{k}$ . Find it and prove it.

### 11.2 Sum of Independent Poissons

Take  $N_1, N_2, \ldots, N_m$  independent Poissons with means  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \ldots, \mu_m$ . Then

$$N_1 + \cdots + N_m \sim \text{Poisson} (\mu_1 + \cdots + \mu_m)$$

This is intuitively clear as a limit of the corresponding result for sums of independent binomials with parameters  $(n_i, p)$  with  $n_i p \equiv \mu_i$  and  $p \downarrow 0$ . Alternatively, we can easily derive it with probability generating functions. Or by induction on m, from the case m = 2, using the convolution formula and the binomial theorem to evaluate

$$\mathbb{P}(N_1 + N_2 = n) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \mathbb{P}(N_1 = k) \mathbb{P}(N_2 = n - k)$$

### 11.3 Poissonization of the Multinomial

What is the distribution of the following random vector?

$$((N_1, N_2, \dots, N_m) | N_1 + N_2 + \dots + N_m = n)$$

for independent  $Poisson(\mu_i)$  variables  $N_i$ ? For m = 2, the last computation suggested above shows as a byproduct that

$$(N_1 \mid N_2 = n) \stackrel{d}{=}$$
Binomial  $(n, p)$  for  $p = \mu_1/(\mu_1 + \mu_2)$ .

For general m, we can compute the above conditional distribution using Bayes rule. We should perform this computation once in our lives, as this is the basis of the entire theory of Poisson processes. It is only of interest to consider  $n_1, \ldots, n_k$  with  $n_1 + \cdots + n_m = n$ , the given value for the sum. So consider

$$\mathbb{P}(N_1 = n_1, N_2 = n_2, \dots, N_m = n_m \mid N_1 + N_2 + \dots + N_m = n)$$

$$= \frac{\mathbb{P}(N_1 = n_1, N_2 = n_2, \dots, N_m = n_m)}{\mathbb{P}(N_1 + \dots + N_m = n)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{e^{-\mu_1} \mu_1^{n_1}}{n_1!} \dots \frac{e^{-\mu_m} \mu_m^{n_m}}{n_m!}}{\frac{e^{-(\mu_1 + \dots + \mu_m)} (\mu_1 + \dots + \mu_m)^{n_1 + \dots + n_m}}{(n_1 + \dots + n_m)!}$$

$$= \frac{n!}{n_1! \dots n_m!} p_1^{n_1} p_2^{n_2} \dots p_m^{n_m}$$

Notice how the exponentials cancel across the numerator and denominator, with  $\mu = \mu_1 + \cdots + \mu_m$  and  $p_k = \frac{\mu_k}{\mu}$ . We recognize this as the familiar multinomial distribution. Hence for  $N = N_1 + \cdots + N_m$  as before, we have

$$(N_1,\ldots,N_m\,|\,N=n)\stackrel{d}{=} \mathbf{Multinomial}(n,p_1,p_2,\ldots,p_m)$$

In words, any vector of independent Poisson counts  $N_1, \ldots, N_m$  conditioned on the total count equal to n is distributed like the counts of values with probabilities  $(p_1, \ldots, p_m)$  in n Multinomial trials. To state the conclusion more formally:

### Poissonization of the Multinomial

The following two conditions on a random vector of counts  $N_1, \ldots, N_m$  are equivalent:

- (1) the  $N_1, \ldots, N_m$  are independent Poissons with means  $\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_m$ .
- (2)  $N_1 + \cdots + N_m$  is **Poisson**  $(\mu_1 + \cdots + \mu_m)$  and given  $N_1 + \cdots + N_m = n$ , the vector  $(N_1, \ldots, N_m)$  is multinomial  $(n, p_1, \ldots, p_m)$  with  $p_k = \frac{\mu_k}{\mu_1 + \cdots + \mu_m}$ .

This statements is both important and easy to check once formulated. It is not obvious at first, but it becomes very familiar and quite intuitive as you work with Poisson processes.

### **Corollary**

Suppose we have  $Y_1, Y_2, \ldots$  iid with probability distribution

$$\mathbb{P}(Y_i = k) = p_k,$$

for some probability distribution  $(p_1, \ldots, p_m)$  on  $\{1, \ldots, m\}$ . Assume that N is independent of  $Y_1, Y_2, \ldots$  and  $N \sim \textbf{Poisson}(\mu)$ . Define

$$N_k := \sum_{i=1}^{N} \mathbb{1}(Y_i = k),$$

which is the number of Y values equal to k in the N trials (hence equal to 0 if N = 0).

Then  $N_1, N_2, \ldots, N_m$  are independent **Poisson**  $(\mu_1, \ldots, \mu_m)$ .

*Proof.* By constuction,  $N_1 + N_2 + \cdots + N_m = N$ , and given N = n, the  $(N_1, \ldots, N_m)$  are multinomial  $(n, p_1, \ldots, p_k)$ . Now plug into the theorem with  $\mu + k = p_k \mu$  so that  $\mu_1 + \cdots + \mu_m = \mu$ .

**Remark** It is not really necessary to have an infinite iid sequence  $Y_i$  to construct counts  $N_k$  as above. All that is needed is a Poisson variable N, and for each  $n \ge 1$ ,

conditionally given N = n a sequence  $Y_1, \ldots, Y_n$  of iid variables with the required distribution  $(p_1, \ldots, p_m)$ . Then the same conclusion holds, for the same reasons.

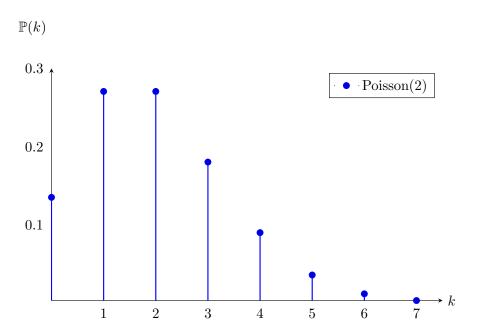
To summarize, if in multinomial trials, we randomize the number of trials N with a Poisson distribution, we make the counts independent. This is highly non obvious at first, but this is a key fact which will be exploited heavily for Poisson Processes. See the text Theorem 2.1 on page 108, Theorem 2.12 on page 110 and Theorem 2.15 on page 115 for several slight variations on this theme, expressed in terms of Poisson processes. The underlying distributional relation that makes all these results work is the Poissonization of the multinomial.

# 11.4 Poisson Point Processes (PPP)

We'll presume that we've seen the Poisson processes on a line. It is more interesting and intuitive to start looking at a PPP in a strip of the plane. The setting is as follows

- Let  $\Delta_i \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda)$  be the Poisson count for box i with intensity  $\lambda > 0$ , some fixed rate per unit area.
- If  $N_t$  is the number of points in  $[0,t] \times [0,1]$ , then it follows
- $N_t = \Delta_1 + \Delta_2 + \ldots + \Delta_t \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda t) \text{ for } t \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$

We can obtain insight for the likely number of counts for  $\Delta_i \sim \text{Poisson}(2)$ , by looking at its histogram. Take note of the the fact that for a random variable with distribution Poisson(m), the values with highest probability occur at m and m-1.



With this in mind, given  $\Delta_i = n$ , we throw down n iid points with uniform probability in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  square  $[i, i+1] \times [0, 1]$ . Study the following diagrams.

## 11.4.1 PPP Strips

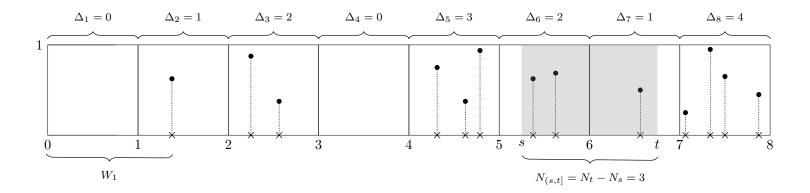


Figure 11.1: We project each "dot" onto the horizontal axis. This exploits two things: (1) the time between arrivals, the first shown below the strip, denoted  $W_1$  and (2) the counts of arrivals between an interval say (s,t]. Recall that  $N_t$  denoted the counts before and including time t. Hence for  $N_{(s,t]}$  we simply take the difference between  $N_t$  and  $N_s$ .

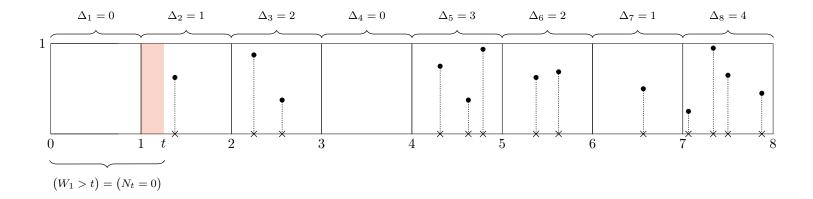


Figure 11.2: Notion of duality. In particular, the first hit arriving after time t, the event  $W_t > 0$  is the same as  $N_t = 0$ .

For example, take independent uniform [0,1] variables  $X_{i,j}$  and  $Y_{i,j}$ , independent of all the  $N_i$ , and for each  $i=1,2,\ldots$  place points at

$$(i-1+X_{i,j},Y_{i,j})$$
 for  $1 \le i \le N_{i,j}$ 

with of course no points at all in the ith square if  $N_i = 0$ 

Now Pitman asks what happens if we project this strip down onto a line. Notice that the probability of projecting two or more points onto the same point on the line is 0. Or in other words, there are no multiple points (repeated X-values) in the strip. Let  $W_1, W_2, W_3, \ldots$  be the spacings between points along the X-axis.

**Case:** 0 < t < 1

Notice  $\mathbb{P}(W_1 > t)$  is simply the probability that there are no points to the left of t.

$$\mathbb{P}(W_1 > t) = \mathbb{P}(N_{\lambda t} = 0) = e^{-\lambda t},$$

by design and the Poissonization of the binomial.

**Case:** 1 < t < 2

Here, we use independence to have:

$$\mathbb{P}(W_i > t) = \mathbb{P}(N_1 = 0 \text{ and count in } [1, t] \times [0, 1] = 0)$$
  
=  $\mathbb{P}(N_1 = 0)\mathbb{P}(\text{count in } [1, t] \times [0, 1] = 0)$   
=  $e^{-\lambda}e^{-\lambda(t-1)}$   
=  $e^{-\lambda t}$ .

This result makes us very happy, and we claim this can be continued inductively for arbitrary t > 0.

### Repeating this discussion for counts

Let  $N_t$  be the number of points to the left or equal to t. Then we simply have:

$$N_t \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda t)$$
.

This is obvious for integer  $t=1,2,\ldots$ , and true also for non-integer t>0 by design and Poissonization of the binomial. Now consider  $0 \le s \le t$ . Observe that  $N_t - N_s$  is the number of points in (s,t]. If s,t are integers, it is obvious that  $N_t - N_s$  is **Poisson**  $(\lambda(t-s))$  independent of  $N_s$ . Now if they are not integers, this still works via the Poissonization of the binomials involved in their fractional parts. That is,  $N_t - N_s$  is the number of points in (s,t]. We have that

$$N_t - N_s \sim \text{Poisson} (\lambda(t-s)),$$

and notice that this count is **independent** of the  $N_s$ . Continuing this, we recover the usual definition of the Poisson point distribution on the half-line from 0 to  $\infty$ . (Text, page 101). Thus we see that the construction of a PPP in the strip, just indicated, projects to a PPP with constant rate  $\lambda$  on  $[0,\infty)$ , just be ignoring the Y-values. Of course, it was not necessary even to involve the Y-values, but the pictures are nicer with both X and Y values, and this construction also serves to explain many further properties of Poisson processes (text Section 2.4).

Let 
$$0 \le t_1 < t_2 < t_3 \le \cdots \le t_n$$
. Then

$$N(t_1), N(t_2) - N(t_1), \dots, N(t_n) - N(t_{n-1})$$

are independent Poisson with parameters

$$\lambda t_1, \lambda (t_2 - t_1), \ldots, \lambda (t_n - t_{n-1}).$$

### **Theorem**

The Poisson finite dimensional distributions indicated above for a counting process  $(N(t), t \geq 0)$  are equivalent to spacings  $W_1, W_2, \ldots$  iid **Exponential**  $(\lambda)$ , where  $W_1, W_1 + W_2, \ldots$  are the arrival times on the X-axis.

This picture has a continuous time axis and a discrete count (vertical) axis. There are formulas that correspond to the picture. Because  $N_t$  is a count, we write it as a sum of indicators:

$$N_t = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(T_n \le t),$$

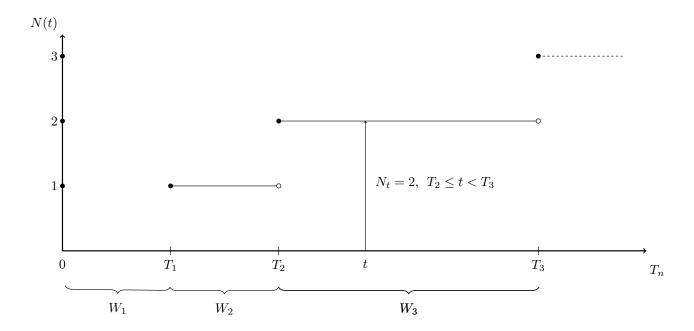


Figure 11.3: Poisson Arrival Process with counting variable  $N(t) = N_t$ , inter-arrival times  $0 < W_1, W_2, \ldots$ , and arrivals  $T_1 < T_2 < \ldots$ 

which is simply counting the  $T_i$  less than or equal to t. Then for the inverse direction, we have the attained min:

$$T_n = \min\{t : N_t = n\} = \min\{t : N_t \ge n\},\$$

where the second expression is generally true even if we jump over a value. Pitman reminds that these are very important formulas. Now we want to notice a key duality implied by the above definitions. Note that this duality is valid for any counting process  $(N_t)$  and  $(T_n)$  as above, without making any distributional assumptions. It applies for instance also to counting processes, where  $T_n = W_1 + \cdots + W_n$  for  $W_n$  that might not be independent or not identically distributed.

### **Key Duality**

For counting process  $N_t$  and arrival times  $T_n$ 

$$(T_n > t) = (N_t < n)$$

Equivalently,

$$(T_n \le t) = (N_t \ge n).$$

To check this, we logically check implication in both ways. In fact,  $t \to N_t$  by definition is increasing  $(\uparrow)$  and right-continuous, and no missing value (that is to

11.6 Applications

say no repeated points).

# 11.5 Applications

$$\mathbb{P}(T_n \le t) = \mathbb{P}(N_t \ge n)$$

$$= 1 - \mathbb{P}(N_t < n)$$

$$= 1 - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^k}{k!}.$$

Pitman asks us to find the density, given the CDF. To do so, we differentiate. This gives

$$f_{T_n}(t) = \frac{d}{dt} \mathbb{P}(T_n \le t)$$

$$= \frac{d}{dt} \left( 1 - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^k}{k!} \right),$$

which gives a telescoping sum. After evaluating, we get a gamma distribution,  $Gamma(n, \lambda)$ .

### 11.6 Secret Method

Pitman gives a secret method so that we are sure to get this right (no book will tell us this). This is much better than performing the telescoping sum. Look at an infinitesimal interval [t, t + dt], so that

$$\mathbb{P}(t \le T_n \le t + dt) = \mathbb{P}(n - 1 \text{ points in } [0, t] \text{ and } \ge 1 \text{ points in } [t, t + dt] + o(dt) \\
= \left[ \frac{e^{-\lambda t} (\lambda t)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \right] \left[ \frac{e^{-\lambda dt} (\lambda dt)^1}{1!} + o(dt) \right] + o(dt) \\
= e^{-\lambda t} \frac{(\lambda t)^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} \lambda dt + o(dt)$$

where o(dt) indicates a term which is negligible compared to dt in calculus limit as  $dt \to 0$  (for the possibility of more than 1 point in the interval of length dt). So this gives the answer that  $T_n$  has probability density

$$f_{T_n}(t) = \frac{e^{-\lambda t} \lambda^n t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}$$
  $(t > 0)$ 

which is the  $Gamma(n, \lambda)$  density. See also text Theorem 2.2 for the more usual derivation of the same density from the important representation

$$T_n = W_1 + \cdots + W_n$$

for independent exponential  $\lambda$  spacings  $W_n$ , denoted  $\tau_n$  by Durrett.

# LECTURE 12

# Poisson Processes, Part 2

### 12.1 Theorem 2.10

Some notation: Pitman will be employing X's instead of Durret's Y's.

# Theorem 2.10 (Durrret)

Let  $X_1, X_2$  be a sequence of i.i.d. random variables, each with the same distribution as X, and define

$$S_N = X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_N \tag{12.1}$$

where  $N \geq 0$  is a random index independent of the sequence  $X_1, X_2,$ , and summing zero terms yields 0, formally  $S_N = 0$  if N = 0. Then

- (i)  $\mathbb{E}(S_N) = \mathbb{E}(N)\mathbb{E}(X)$  provided  $\mathbb{E}N < \infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}|X| < \infty$
- (ii)  $\operatorname{Var}(S_N) = \mathbb{E}(N)\operatorname{Var}(X) + \operatorname{Var}(N)(\mathbb{E}X)^2$ provided  $\mathbb{E}N < \infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}X^2 < \infty$
- (iii) If  $N \sim \text{Poisson}(\mu)$ , then  $\mathbb{E}(N) = \mathbb{V}ar(N) = \mu$ . Implying

$$\operatorname{Var}(S_N) = \mu \operatorname{Var}(X) + \mu (\mathbb{E}X)^2 = \mu \ \mathbb{E}(X^2)$$

*Proof.* Durret's proof is fine. But here is a shorter derivation. Recall that for any numerical random variable Y with  $\mathbb{E}|Y| < \infty$ , and any random variable X

$$\mathbb{E}(Y) = \mathbb{E}\Big[\mathbb{E}(Y \mid X)\Big] \tag{12.2}$$

In words,

"The expectation is the expectation of the conditional expectation"

And for any random variable Y with  $\mathbb{E}Y^2 < \infty$  and any random variable X

$$Var(Y) = \mathbb{E}\Big[Var(Y \mid X)\Big] + Var\Big[\mathbb{E}(Y \mid X)\Big]$$
(12.3)

"The variance of is the expectation of the conditional variance plus the variance of the conditional expectation" <sup>1</sup>

These formulas apply in an obvious way to our set-up with  $Y = S_N$  and X = N. Now to the proof.

For conclusion (i)

$$\mathbb{E}(S_N) = \mathbb{E}\Big[\mathbb{E}(S_N \mid N)\Big] = \mathbb{E}\big[N\mathbb{E}(X)\big] = \mathbb{E}(N)\mathbb{E}(X)$$

For conclusion (ii)

$$\operatorname{Var}(Y) = \mathbb{E}\left[\operatorname{Var}(S_N \mid N)\right] + \operatorname{Var}\left[\mathbb{E}(S_N \mid N)\right]$$
$$= \mathbb{E}\left[N\operatorname{Var}(X)\right] + \operatorname{Var}\left[N\mathbb{E}(X)\right]$$
$$= \mathbb{E}(N)\operatorname{Var}(X) + \operatorname{Var}(N)(\mathbb{E}X)^2$$

For conclusion (iii) just plug in the fact that  $N \sim \text{Poisson}(\mu)$  has mean and variance both equal to  $\mu$ .

## 12.2 Generalization to a Stopping Time N

In the case where N is not necessarily independent of  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ , we study Wald's Identities.

### 12.2.1 Wald's Identities

We have this notion of N being a stopping time for the sequence  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  For example,  $N = \min\{n \geq 1 : X_n \in B\}$  or  $N = \min\{n \geq 1 : X_n \in S_n\}$ . We realize,

- (N = n) is determined by  $(X_1, X_2, \dots X_n)$
- $(N \le n)$  and (N > n) are determined by  $(X_1, X_2, \dots X_n)$
- (N < n) and  $(N \ge n)$  are determined by  $(X_1, X_2, \dots X_{n-1})$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Pitman suggests reciting this 9 times before one sleeps (if you haven't yet internalized it already).

### Claim If both $\mathbb{E}N$ and

$$\mathbb{E}|X| < \infty$$

, and N is a stopping time of the sequence  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ , then  $\mathbb{E}(S_N) = \mathbb{E}(N)\mathbb{E}(X)$  is still true. i.e. It is as if N and X are independent. This is not intuitive at first, we sketch the proof and show the claim is true first for  $X \geq 0$ .

$$S_N = \sum_{k=1}^{N} X_k = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} X_k \ \mathbf{1}\{k \le N\}$$

Notice  $(k \leq N) = (N > k - 1) = (N \leq k - 1)^c$  is determined by  $X_1, \ldots, X_{k-1}$ , hence independent of  $X_k$ . Applying expectation

$$\mathbb{E}(S_N) = \mathbb{E}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} X_k \ \mathbf{1}\{k \le N\}\right) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (\mathbb{E}X_k) \mathbb{P}(N \ge k)$$

Since  $\mathbb{E}X_k = \mathbb{E}X$  for all x, and exploiting the tail-sum formula, this is

$$(\mathbb{E}X)\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\mathbb{P}(N\geq k)}_{\text{tail-sum}} = (\mathbb{E}X)(\mathbb{E}N)$$

Here the swap of  $\mathbb{E}$  and  $\Sigma$  is justified by non-negativity of all variables. If the  $X_i$  are signed, first split each  $X_i = X_i^+ - X_i^-$  into the difference of two positive variables, work on the positive and negative parts separately, then argue that both pieces are finite so OK to take their difference.

Note. What really makes this argument work is that for each k the event  $N \geq k$  is independent of  $X_k$ . One way to achieve this is to assume N is independent of each  $X_k$ . Another way is to assume N is a stopping time, so  $(N \geq k)$  is determined by  $X_1, \ldots, X_{k-1}$ . A slight generalization that includes both cases is to assume there is some richer sequence of random variables  $(W_0, W_1, \ldots)$  such that

- a) N with values in  $\{0, 1, 2, ...\}$  is a stopping time relative to  $(W_0, W_1, ...)$ , meaning  $(N \le n)$  is determined by  $(W_0, ..., W_n)$ .
- b) each variable  $X_n$  for  $n \geq 1$  has the same distribution as X, and  $X_n$  is independent of  $(W_0, \ldots, W_{n-1})$ .

The proof is exactly the same. There is also a companion Wald identity for variances. Under the same assumptions a) and b) above,

• if  $\mathbb{E}N<\infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}X^2<\infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}X=0$  then  $\mathbb{E}S_N=0$  and  $\mathbb{E}S_N^2=\mathbb{E}N(EX^2)$ 

To see this, assume first that N is bounded above by say m, and compute

$$\mathbb{E}(S_N^2) = \mathbb{E}\left(\sum_{j=1}^m X_j \mathbb{1}(j \le N)\right) \left(\sum_{k=1}^m X_k \mathbb{1}(k \le N)\right)$$

be expanding the product. The diagonal terms easily give  $\mathbb{E}N(EX^2)$ , and the offdiagonal terms are all 0 if  $\mathbb{E}X = 0$ . Some care is required to pass to the limit of unbounded stopping times N, using convergence in mean square of  $S_{N \wedge m}$  to  $S_N$  as  $m \to \infty$ . 116 12.3 Poisson Thinning

# 12.3 Poisson Thinning

We turn back to looking at the Poisson Point Process (PPP) on the strip  $[0, \infty) \times [0, 1]$ . Recall that points are distributed with intensity  $\lambda$  per unit area: each square  $[n, n+1] \times [0, 1]$  contains a Poisson( $\lambda$ ) number of points, independently from one square to the next, and given m points in one of these squares, these points are distributed i.i.d. according to area in the square.

The general formula for  $Var(S_N)$  for a stopping time N when  $\mathbb{E}X \neq 0$  is not so simple. Exercise: find the formula, and note it contains an  $\mathbb{E}NS_N$  which is easy to evaluate if N is independent of  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$ , but not always so easy to evaluate.

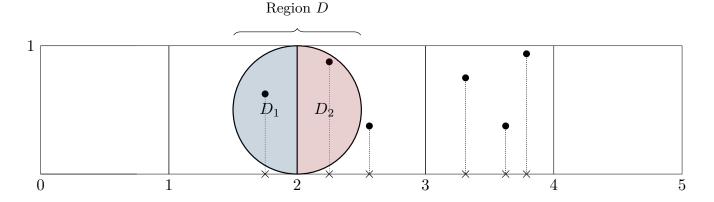


Figure 12.1: PPP on  $[0, \infty) \times [0, 1]$  with region D.

Consider the region D, a circle with diameter one shown above. Let N(D) be the number of points in D. So N(D) = 2 for the particular realization of the Poisson scatter illustrated. We seek to compute the probability of this event

$$\mathbb{P}\Big(N(D) = 2\Big)$$

12.3 Poisson Thinning

We observe

•  $N(D) = N(D_1) + N(D_2)$ , where  $D_1$  is the left half-disk and  $D_2$  the right half-disk.

- Area $(D) = \frac{\pi}{4}$ , and
- by symmetry,  $N(D_1)$  and  $N(D_2)$  are i.i.d.

So to re-frame the question,

Given that a point falls in  $(1,2] \times [0,1]$ , what is the probability that it falls into D?

It is clear that  $Area(D_1) = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ . We can then see

$$N(D_1) \stackrel{d}{=} N(D_2) \sim \operatorname{Poisson}\left(\lambda imes rac{\pi}{8}
ight)$$

That is, we derive the distribution of  $N(D_1)$  from the known Poisson ( $\lambda$ ) distribution of  $N((1,2] \times [0,1]$  by Poisson thinning. Hence

$$N(D) \sim \operatorname{Poisson}\left(\lambda \times \frac{\pi}{8} + \lambda \times \frac{\pi}{8}\right) = \operatorname{Poisson}\left(\lambda \times \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \operatorname{Poisson}\left(\lambda \times \operatorname{Area}(D)\right)$$

The conclusion holds when we translate the disk to the left by 1/4. Or any other amount. Check it!

## 12.3.1 Poisson Thinning for a General Region

Let D be any sub-region of the strip with finite area as depicted below.

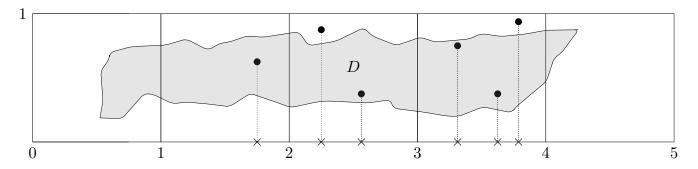


Figure 12.2: PPP on  $[0, \infty) \times [0, 1]$  with general region D.

For simplicity, let  $m < \infty$ . We partition D

$$D = D_1 \cup D_2 \cup \cdots \cup D_m$$

where

$$D_i = D \cap \{(i, i+1] \times [0, 1]\}$$

118 12.3 Poisson Thinning

and it follows

$$N(D) = \underbrace{N(D_1) + N(D_1) + \ldots + N(D_m)}_{\text{independent Poisson counts}}$$

where by construction and Poisson thining

$$N(D_i) \sim \text{Poisson} (\lambda \times \text{Area}(D_i))$$

Hence by additing independent Poisson variables, no matter what the shape of the region D, provided its area is well defined (technically, D is a measurable subset of the strip), the number of Poisson points that fall in D has Poisson  $(()\lambda Area(D))$  distribution

## 12.3.2 Poisson Thinning for Two General Regions

Suppose D and F are disjoint regions as depicted below. By Poisson thinning

$$N(D) \sim \operatorname{Poisson}(\lambda \times \operatorname{Area}(D))$$
 and  $N(F) \sim \operatorname{Poisson}(\lambda \times \operatorname{Area}(F))$ 

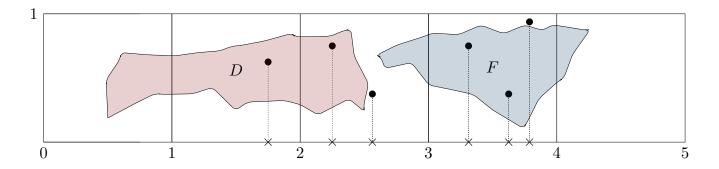
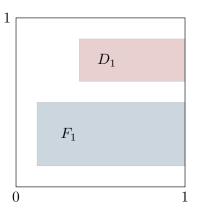


Figure 12.3: PPP on  $[0,\infty)\times[0,1]$  with two disjoint regions D and F.

Observe that for each block on the strip we have two independent counts. In total, m independent pairs

$$N(D) = N(D_1) + N(D_2) + \dots + N(D_m)$$

$$N(F) = N(F_1) + N(F_2) + \dots + N(F_m)$$



12.4 General Measures 119

Within each square i there is a count for  $D_i$ , a count for  $F_i$  and a count for the rest of the square. Hence, by Poissonizaton of the trinomial, the counts  $D_i$  and  $F_i$  in each square are independent, and they are independent between squares by construction, so we conclude:

• If D and F are disjoint sub-regions of the strip, then the counts N(D) and N(F) are independent Poisson variables with means  $\lambda \text{Area}(D)$  and  $\lambda \text{Area}(F)$ .

The extension of this argument to 3 or more disjoint regions is obvious. The counts in any number of disjoint regions are independent Poisson variables.

### 12.4 General Measures

A measure  $\mu$  on a space S is a function of subsets of S. e.g. length, area, volume, probability, subject countable additivity

$$\mu(A) = \mu(A_1) + \mu(A_2) + \dots$$

Define

$$(\mathcal{S}, \mathfrak{S}, \mu) = \text{measure space}$$

where  $\mathfrak{S}$  (curly S) is the domain of measurable sets A, and  $\mu(A)$  is a measure. Say a stochastic process

$$\Big(N(A), A \in \mathbf{S}\Big)$$
 is a PPP with intensity  $\mu$  iff

- ullet  $N(A) \sim \operatorname{Poisson}\left(\mu(A)\right)$
- If  $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_m$  are disjoint measurable sets, then the  $N(A_i)$  are independent.

In the case  $S = [0, \infty) \times [0, 1]$  and  $\mu = \lambda \times$  Area we constructed a PPP( $\mu$ ) by throwing down Poisson numbers of points i.i.d. with probability proportional to area in each of a sequence of unit squares. It was not important in this construction that the squares were unit squares, or even that they were squares. Any way of covering the strip with rectangles would work the same: give each rectangle R a Poisson  $\mu(R)$  number of points, and given there are m points in the rectangle, let each of them be uniformly distributed. You could do the same with triangles and get the same Poisson process. More generally, the same argument shows that if  $\mu$  is any  $\sigma$ -finite measure, meaning

$$S = S_1 + S_2 + \dots \tag{12.4}$$

is the disjoint union of sets  $S_i$  with  $\mu(S_i) < \infty$  for all i = 1, 2, ..., then then we can construct a PPP( $\mu$ ), by throwing down independent **Poisson** ( $\mu(S_i)$ ) numbers of points in  $S_i$ , and given n points in  $S_i$ , assign them be i.i.d. locations according to  $\mu(\cdot | S_i)$ , meaning for  $\cdot = A$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(\text{point in } A) = \mu(A \mid \mathcal{S}_i) := \frac{\mu(A \cap \mathcal{S}_i)}{\mu(\mathcal{S}_i)}.$$

12.4 General Measures

The result will be a PPP( $\mu$ ), no matter what the choice of partition (12.4) used in this construction. This is a very powerful and general way of thinking about Poisson processes, which is more useful in many respects than the logically equivalent description in the case  $S = [0, \infty)$  and  $\mu$  is  $\lambda$  times length measure, that the spacings between the points are i.i.d. exponential ( $\lambda$ ) variables.

# LECTURE 13

# **Midterm Preparation**

### 13.1 Midterm Announcements

coverage text and readings to date (Markov Chains and Poisson Processes)

format 5 questions each 3-4 parts each, similar in style to past midterms

### 13.2 Old Midterm Exam Problems

See aggregate file of exam problems on bCourses.

#### Problem 18

Read text and lecture notes

### Problem 19

- random walk on  $\{0, 1, ...\}$  with state 0 absorbing, i.e. P(0, 0) = 1
- this chain is driven by a probability distribution  $p_0, p_1, \ldots$
- from i > 0 this walk moves to i + j 1 with probability  $p_j$
- say X has distribution  $p_0, p_1, \ldots$ , walk hits increments by X-1 until it hits 0
- $f_{ij} = \mathbb{P}_i(\text{ever hits } j \text{ at time } n \geq 1)$

Say you know  $f_{10}$ , then  $f_{i,i-1} = f_{10}$  for all i. What can we say about  $f_{20}$ ? Notice that to get from 2 to 1 the walk must pass through 1 along the way! How is this useful? Observe, by the *strong Markov property* 

$$f_{20} = f_{21} f_{10}$$

which implies

$$f_{i0} = f_{10}^i$$

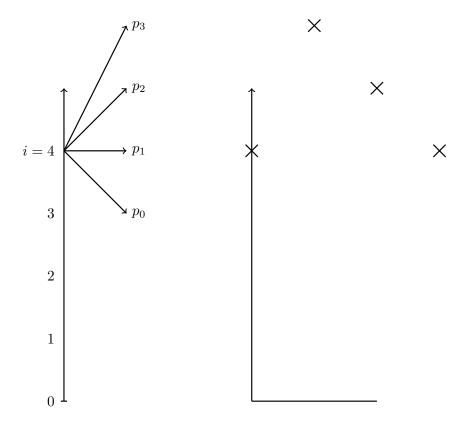


Figure 13.1: Illustration of problem 19's random walk, starting at 4.

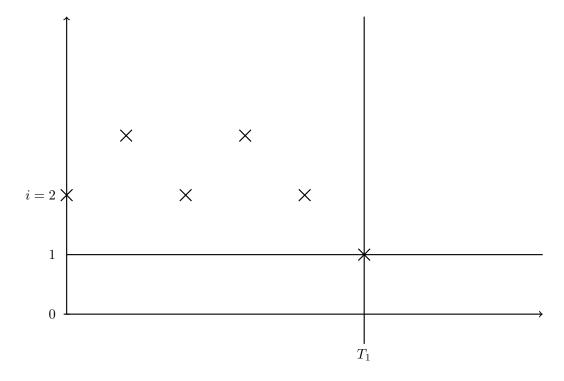


Figure 13.2: Illustration of problem 19's random walk, starting at 2 and necessarily passing through 1 to get to 0.

So let's find  $f_{10}$  be a first step analysis, which combined with the above observation gives the harmonic equation

$$f_{10} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_k f_{10}^k = \phi(f_{10}) \tag{*}$$

An old friend has returned, notice (\*) is the equation for the extinction probability for a branching process, starting with one individual and offspring generating function  $p_0, p_1, \ldots$  Recall that the problem has given you

$$\mu = \sum_{k} k p_k$$

The mean of the p distribution is driving this random walk. One technical remark, we must assume that  $p_1 < 1$  for the statements of the problem to be true. For if  $p_1 = 1$ , the walk stays fixed where it starts (all states are absorbing). In the branching process, the population stays the same forever, because each person has one child. If you think a technical condition is missing on the exam, add it in. If there's an ambiguity, exploit it to your advantage.

In this problem  $\mu \leq 1$ . Let's sketch the PGF for  $\mu \leq 1$ .

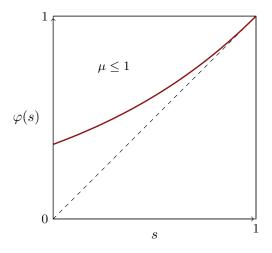


Figure 13.3: Notice that the unique root of  $s = \varphi(s)$  is at s = 1 if  $\mu \le 1$  and we forbid  $p_1 = 1$ .

We can then see

$$f_{10} = f_{i0} = 1 \implies f_{ij} = 1 \qquad (0 \le j \le i)$$

For the rest of the problem, solve using first step analysis. For j > 1

$$f_{ij} = p_0 f_{i-1,j} + p_1 f_{i,j} + p_2 f_{i+1,j} + \dots$$

$$=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}p_kf_{i-1+k,j}$$

Notice if i-1+k>j, then  $f_{i-1+k,j}=1$ , which implies  $\sum$  from some point on = tail probability of  $p_{\ell}+p_{\ell+1}+\ldots=\mathbb{P}(X\geq\ell)$ .

# 13.3 Intuition for Constructing Graphs of PGFs

This is done by example. Take a look.

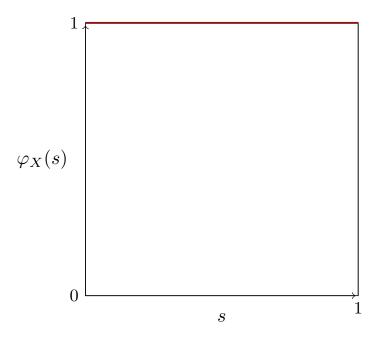


Figure 13.4: Plot of probability generating function for X=0

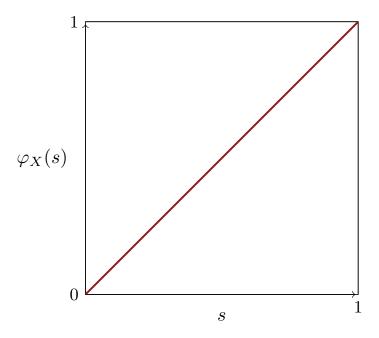


Figure 13.5: Plot of probability generating function for X = 1

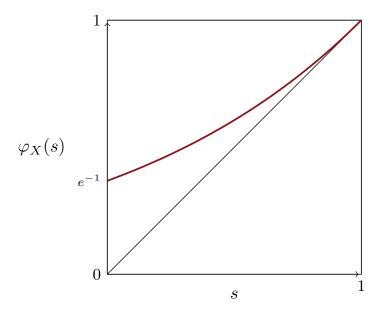


Figure 13.6: Plot of probability generating function for  $X \sim \text{Poisson}(1)$  and diagonal. Observe the  $\varphi_X(s) = e^{-(1-s)}$  is convex above the diagonal with a slope of 1 at (1,1).

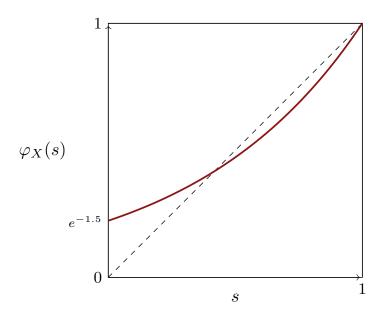


Figure 13.7: Plot of probability generating function for  $X \sim \text{Poisson}$  (3/2) and diagonal. Observe the  $\varphi_X(s) = e^{-\frac{3}{2}(1-s)}$  is convex below the diagonal of 3/2 at (1,1).

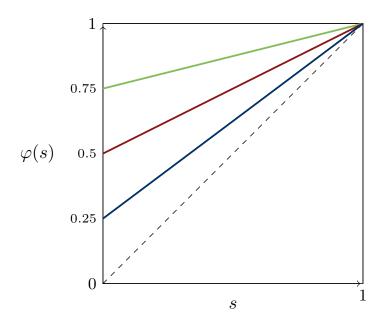


Figure 13.8: Plot of probability generating function for **Bernoulli**(p) with parameters  $p = \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$  in green, red, and blue respectively. In general, the probability generating function for a **Bernoulli**(p) random variable is  $\varphi(s) = 1 - p + ps$ 

# 13.4 Discussion: Geometric-Negative Binomial PGFs

For a **Geometric**(p) random variable defined on  $\{0, 1, \dots\}$ 

$$p_n = p(1-p)^n$$

and its PGF is

$$\varphi(s) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n s^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p(1-p)s^n = \frac{p}{1-qs}$$

Now let  $X_1, X_2,...$  be i.i.d. **Geometric**(p) random variables defined on  $\{0, 1,...\}$ . We seek to find the distribution of

$$F_n = X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_n$$

Clearly,

$$\mathbb{E}s^{F_n} = \mathbb{E}s^{X_1} \cdots \mathbb{E}s^{X_n} = \left(\frac{p}{1 - qs}\right)^n$$

As an instance of this structure,  $F_n$  may be constructed as the number of failures before the  $n^{\text{th}}$  success in **Bernoulli**(p) trials.

$$\underbrace{0\ 0\ 0}_{X_1} 1\ \underbrace{0\ 0\ 0}_{X_2} 1\ \underbrace{0\ 0}_{X_3} 1$$

So how to get the probabilities in the distribution of  $F_n$  out of the generating function? Observe

$$\left(\frac{p}{1-qs}\right)^n = p^n (1-qs)^{-n} = p^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} {\binom{-n}{k}} (-qs)^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(F_n = k) s^k$$

which is good for |qs| < 1. As a reminder, recall

$$(1-x)^{-1} = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots$$
  $|x| < 1$ 

Back to the question of point probabilities for  $F_n$ , we simply inspect the formula conclude

 $\mathbb{P}(F_n = k) = p^n \binom{-n}{k} (-q)^k$ 

In general, to recover the probabilities in a distribution on  $\{0, 1, 2, ...\}$  from its generating function  $\phi(s)$ , use standard series formulas to expand  $\phi(s)$  in powers of s. The coefficients of these powers are the probabilities. Hence the uniqueness theorem: Two random variables with the same pgf have the same distribution.

### Problem 21

We have a Markov chain on  $\{0, 1, \dots, N\}$  and from the problem statement

$$X_{n+1} \, | \, X_n \sim \operatorname{Binomial}\left(N, rac{X_n}{N}
ight)$$

We are tasked to show

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}_k(X_n = n) = \frac{k}{N} \tag{*}$$

Given a distribution, the mean gives the most basic information about it. For **Binomial** (n, p), its mean is np. Hence

$$\mathbb{E}(X_{n+1} \mid X_n) = N \cdot \frac{X_n}{N} = X_n \implies \mathbb{E}X_{n+1} = \mathbb{E}X_n$$

and this is true for  $X_0 = k$ , by the Markov property. Observe

$$\mathbb{E}_k X_n = \mathbb{E}_k X_0 = k$$

and hence

$$k = \sum_{x=0}^{N} x \mathbb{P}_k(X_n = k)$$

splitting the sum

$$\underbrace{\sum_{x=0}^{N-1} x \mathbb{P}_k(X_n = k)}_{\text{terms vanish to 0, as } n \to \infty} + N \mathbb{P}_k(X_n = N)$$

We then conclude  $(\star)$ . We've actually seen this argument before with respect to he vanishing terms. The chain has  $\{0, N\}$  absorbing and the chain wobbles between these states until it hits one of those boundaries. The chance that it does not eventually hit a boundary is zero, by the geometric bounds argument; no matter where you start, there's some path to hitting the boundary.

### **Problem 27**

We have a Markov chain  $(X_n)$  with finite state space S, probability transition matrix P, absorbing set B, and  $T = \min\{n \geq 1 : X_n \in B\}$ . We also assume  $\mathbb{P}_i(T < \infty) = 1$ . For part a, we are tasked with deriving a formula for

$$\mathbb{P}_i(X_{T-1} = j, X_T = k) \tag{*}$$

where  $i, j \notin B$  and  $k \in B$ . In terms of<sup>1</sup>

$$W = (G \text{ before}) = (I - Q)^{-1}$$

Observe,

$$Q(x,y) = P(x,y)$$
  $x, y \in B$ 

and

$$W = I + Q + Q^2 + \dots$$

Looking at

$$(Q\mathbb{1})(x) = \sum_{y \in B^c} P^n(x, y) = \mathbb{P}_x(T > n) \downarrow 0$$

Going back to (\*)

$$\mathbb{P}_{i}(X_{T-1} = j, X_{T} = k) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{i}(X_{n-1} = j, X_{n} = k, T = n)$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{i}(X_{m} = j, T > m, X_{m+1} = k)$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}_{i}(X_{m} = j, T > m)P(j, k)$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} Q^{m}(i, j)P(j, k)$$

$$= (I - Q)^{-1}(i, j)P(j, k)$$

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>I$  and Q are  $B^{c} \times B^{c}$  matrices.

# LECTURE 14

# Renewal Theory, Part 1

### **Class Announcements**

- The midterm had quite a large spread, and it did require that we have some manipulative skill to perform actions on the material (not simply true/false checks).
- To prepare for the exams, we should practice examples to really get familiar with the material. The purpose of this course is to acquire concepts and skills and be able to translate them into applications.
- This week's homework is an overhang of Poisson process material that we've covered in lecture and text.

# 14.1 Introduction to Renewal Theory

Renewal Theory serves as an introduction into continuous-time parameter models. Renewal theory provides an important technique for analysis of more complicated stochastic processes such as queuing systems. We start from a basic counting process in continuous time, e.g. a Poisson Process with  $\lambda$  constant rate. We can also make  $\lambda(t)$  vary, as in this week's homework. In a typical counting process model, we have that  $\lambda(t)$ 

$$N_t = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T_n \le t) \tag{14.1}$$

where  $(T_n, n \ge 1)$  is an increasing sequence of arrival times, usually with  $0 < T_1 < T_2 < \cdots$  indicating no multiple points (simultaneous arrivals). We've seen an illustration of this process before (see next page), where time is on the horizontal axis and on the vertical, we have a discrete count. This illustration follows logically

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>N(t) = N_{t}$  when convenient.

130 14.2 Renewal Theory

from (14.1). Logically and by understanding what the variables mean, we have the fundamental *inversion* or *duality* relation

$$(N_t \le n) \iff (T_n \ge t)$$

relating  $(T_n, n = 1, 2, ...)$  with typically continuous values at discrete time points n and  $(N_t, t \ge 0)$  which has discrete values over continuous time t. Notice that if we have a model for the distribution of  $(T_n, n \ge 1)$ , it determines the distribution of the process  $(N_t, t \ge 0)$  and vice versa. We have seen this in a first model

$$\operatorname{PPP}(\lambda): T_n = \operatorname{sum \ of} \ n \ \operatorname{iid} \ \operatorname{Exponential} \left(\lambda\right)$$

which is logically equivalent to  $(N_t, t \ge 0)$  with stationary independent increments with Poisson distributions

$$N_t \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda t)$$

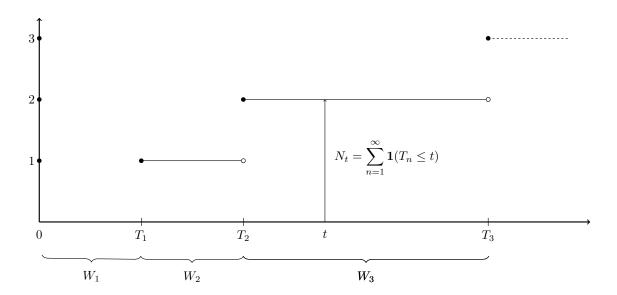


Figure 14.1: Poisson Process with arrival time  $0 < T_1 < T_2 \dots$ , inter-arrival times  $0 < W_1, W_2, \dots$ , and counting process  $(N_t, t \ge 0)$ 

## 14.2 Renewal Theory

Now, we consider a model for Renewal Theory. We define<sup>2</sup>

$$T_n = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n$$

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Note that Durret uses  $t_i$  as the inter-arrival times and  $\tau_i$  as exponentially distributed inter-arrival times. Previously we used  $W_i$  for iid exponentials, but W has other meanings in queuing theroy.  $X_i$  was selected after an in-class vote.

14.2 Renewal Theory

where the  $X_i > 0$  are iid with the same non-negative distribution. Note that the duality relation (14.1) holds in renewal theory.

We say that a renewal occurs at time  $T_n$  and say that  $(N_t, t \ge 0)$  is the renewal counting process. Often, such a sequence of random times  $T_n$  and such a renewal process are found embedded in (meaning they are functions of) some more complicated stochastic processes. We have seen this before in a familiar discrete time setup, i.e. Strong Markov Property.

Take a Markov chain with some reference state 0 (start at state 0). Let  $T_n$  be the time of the *n*th return to 0. Then  $X_1 = T_1, X_2, X_3, \ldots$  are iid copies of  $X_1 = T_1$  by the Strong Markov Property. This is essentially discrete renewal theory. We've worked with this in a past homework with a generating function problem with tail probabilities. To consider the more interesting (continuous) scenario, in general, we may imagine  $T_n$  as an *n*th "regeneration time" in some stochastic process.

### 14.2.1 Example: Queueing Model

Consider a queueing model with the following diagram of a set of 'busy cycles.' Let Q(t) denote the number of individuals (customers, packets, items ...) in the queue at time t. We start with an empty queue at Q(t) = 0, and the value goes up as more items arrive and are being attended to, and with more time, some of those are 'finished' (depart from the queue) and replaced with new items in the queue. We'll see in the text that several models of queues are analyzed in terms of their busy cycles via renewal theory. We notice that if we just do our renewal counting process, there is a lot less going on than otherwise. This renewal process is a component of a much more complex stochastic process. This is motivation as to how we can think in terms of renewal theory before looking closer into queueing models.

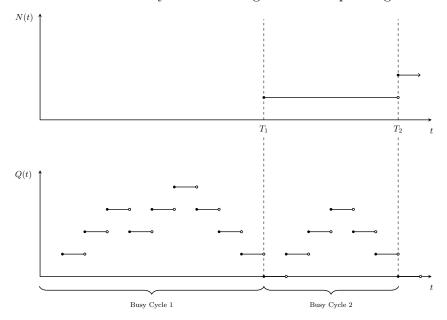


Figure 14.2: Renewal process from busy cycles of an underlying queuing process.

14.2 Renewal Theory

### 14.2.2 Example: A Janitor Replacing Lightbulbs

Take  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  as the lifetimes of lightbulbs, which are iid (e.g. from the same factory with the same level of quality control). Suppose that a new bulb is installed at time 0, and as each bulb burns out, it is replaced by a new one.

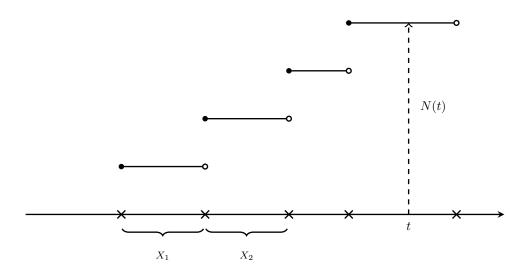


Figure 14.3: Janitor light-bulb replacement illustration.

We want the Poisson process to be a special case, so we take the convention of defining

$$N(t) := \#$$
 of replacements by time  $t = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbf{1}(T_n \le t)$ 

where  $T_n := X_1 + \cdots + X_n$  is the time of the *n*th replacement. Of course, this can be more complicated than a Poisson process, because there the lifetimes of the light bulbs might not follow an exponential distribution. We want the abstraction and the additional flexibility to accommodate other lifetime distributions and things like busy cycles of queues.

Now we ask, what can we say about the renewal counting process  $(N(t), t \ge 0)$ ? If the  $X_i$  are iid **Exponential**  $(\lambda)$ , then  $N(t), t \ge 0$  has the very special property of independent increments. In general, this is in fact characteristic of the exponential distribution, at least in continuous time. (If we did this in discrete time, we have a similar special role for the geometric distribution, which corresponds to binomial counts with independent increments). Here, we take spacings to be generic and counts no longer have independent increments. However, for  $N_t = N(t)$ , we still have the duality

$$(T_n > t) \iff (N_t < n).$$

If we can find the CDF of  $T_n$  for all n, then we get the CDF of  $N_t$  for all t. The difficulty is that there are very few models for which we have an explicit formula for the above probability for general n and t. We can use transforms (Laplace, MGF's), but then we have to invert, which can be a difficult task. The main parts of renewal theory get away from explicit formulas and deal with much more general things which hold even when we cannot get an explicit handle on the details.

The main idea is that we know a lot about the sums of random variables  $T_n = X_1 + \ldots + X_n$ , especially the Law of Large numbers

$$\frac{T_n}{n} \to \mathbb{E}X =: \mu = \frac{1}{\lambda} \text{ as } n \to \infty$$

Here  $X:=X_1=T_1$  is a generic representative of the iid sequence whose partial sums are the  $T_n$ . Here  $\mu$  is the mean time between renewals, and  $:=1/\mu$  is the mean rate of renewals per unit time. If X is exponential( $\lambda$ ), then  $\mu=1/\lambda$  is a familiar formula. In general, for a renewal process replacing a Poisson process, the analog of the rate of the PPP is the long run rate per unit time of renewals, which is  $\lambda=1/\mu$  for  $\mu$  the mean inter-renewal time. Beware that in the text and the literature you never know without careful reading whether  $\lambda$  or  $\mu$  represents a rate or a mean or an inverse mean.

## 14.3 Weak Sense of Convergence

First of all, we'll define a weak sense of convergence. Assume  $\mathbb{E}X < \infty$ . Fix x > 0 and look at the probability that  $T_n/n$  differs from its expected value  $\mathbb{E}X$  by some small value  $\epsilon$  (which we may set to  $10^{-6}$  for instance):

$$\underbrace{\mathbb{P}\left(\left|\frac{T_n}{n} - \mathbb{E}X\right| > \epsilon\right)}_{\leq \frac{\sigma^2}{n\epsilon^2}} \to 0.$$

We have an honest proof to say that this probability in the case of a finite variance is bounded by  $\frac{\sigma^2}{n}$ , by Chebyshev's inequality, where  $\sigma^2$  is the variance of X. The conclusion is also valid just assuming  $< \infty$ , as shown in more advanced treatments of probability theory. The convergence promised by this weak sense of convergence can be very slow. Typically, if we assume more moments of X are finite, we may have a faster rate of convergence, e.g. geometrically fast if  $\mathbb{E}e^{\theta X} < \infty$  for some  $\theta > 0$ , by Chernoff bounds https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chernoff\_bound.

### 14.3.1 Strong Law of Large Numbers

This is implicitly used by Durrett in the ergodic theory of Markov chains and is used again in his treatment of renewal theory. The stronger statement is:

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{T_n}{n}=\mathbb{E}X\right)=1$$

We think of this as the probability of an event. The difficulty is this is an infinite time horizon event. We cannot say if the event has happened at any given (finite) point in time, but this does not stop us thinking about it. As a quick explanation<sup>3</sup>, we consider some axioms of probability. Essentially, we define  $\mathbb{P}(F)$  for a collection of events F that is closed under finite and *countable* set operations.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>For a full explanation, take Math 104, Math 202, and Stat 205.

That means that we can look at things like

$$\mathbb{P}\left(\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n\right) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{P}(F_n) \tag{14.2}$$

for disjoint  $F_n$ . We call this the *infinite sum rule* that we use for mathematical convenience. We'll assume that  $0 \leq \mathbb{P}(F) \leq 1$  and  $\mathbb{P}(A \cup B) = \mathbb{P}(A) + \mathbb{P}(B)$  for  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ , and  $\mathbb{P}(\Omega) = 1 \implies \mathbb{P}(\emptyset) = 0$ . It can be shown assuming these basic rules of  $\mathbb{P}$  for finite set operations that the infinite sum rule (14.2) is equivalent to each of the following conditions:

- $F_1 \supseteq F_2 \supseteq \dots$  then  $\mathbb{P}(\bigcap_n F_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(F_n)$
- $F_1 \subseteq F_2 \subseteq \dots$  then  $\mathbb{P}(\bigcup_n F_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(F_n)$

So the infinite sum rule allows the probabilities of limiting intersections or unions of events to be computed as either decreasing or increasing limits, as the case may be. In each case, the existence of the limit is obvious, assuming basic properties of real numbers. What is not obvious is that if probabilities of infinite intersections and unions are defined like this, then repeated use of these limit rules does not ever lead to two different probabilities for the same event, after representing the event in different ways. However, it is shown by measure theory that for all the probability models discussed in this course, this is not a problem. i.e. that these models can be defined in a way that is consistent with the infinite sum rule.

Now look at the event that  $\left(\frac{T_n}{n} \to \mu\right)$ 

$$\left(\frac{T_n}{n} \to \mu\right) = \left(\forall \ \epsilon > 0, \ \exists \ N : \forall \ n \ge N, \ \left|\frac{T_n}{n} - \mu\right| \le \epsilon\right)$$
$$= \bigcap_{\epsilon > 0} \bigcap_{N > 0} \bigcap_{n \ge N} \left(\left|\frac{T_n}{n} - \mu\right| \le \epsilon\right)$$

which is just a succession of infinite intersections/unions/intersections, to which the above limit tules can be applied, to evaluate the probability of  $(T_n/n \to \mu)$ . Mathematicians discovered that doing this gives the event probability 1 (the limit exists and equals  $\mu$  with probability 1). In this way, we combine the axioms of probability and limits to prove the Strong Law of Large Numbers. We will not rigorously go over the SLLN in this course. Pitman reminds that we take this detour simply to elaborate upon the convergence that Durett simply assumes, where it is stated that there is convergence of random variables without indicating the precise meaning of this convergence.

Consider a Poisson Process with rate  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$  with the graph of  $t \to N_t$ . See depiction on next page. If we look only at the time points  $t = 1 \times 10^6, 2 \times 10^6, \ldots$  at each of these points, the weak law of large numbers only gives us that with very overwhelming probability, we will be in the bands. The fact that we have these bands tells us

little about the behavior in between. The only obvious thing is to use Boole's inequality to sum a million inequalities to get a union bound, between one multiple of a million and the next. But there are better way to estimate the probabilities of such deviations, leading to the strong law of large numbers, which tells us that we can essentially get a uniform band around a linear approximation. Hence, the Strong Law of Large Numbers gives this as a bound that as we follow along time, the Poisson process will always stay within the bounds, with overwhelming probabilty. The Poisson process is simpler in this respect than a renewal process, because both  $(N_t, t \geq 0)$  and  $(T_n, n \geq 0)$  have stationalry independent increments, to which the strong law can be applied directly. For a renewal process, with have only that the  $T_n$  increments satisfy the Strong Law. That is,

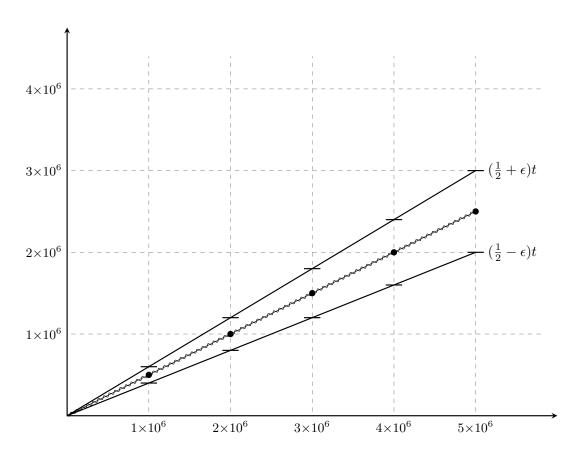
$$\frac{T_n}{n} \to \mathbb{E}X$$
 with probability 1.

However, this can be turned into:

$$\frac{N_t}{t} \to \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}X}$$
 (with probability 1, by duality or inversion)

For a more careful treatment and discussion, see Durett. Intuitively, if either one of the functions  $\mapsto T_n$  or  $t \mapsto N_t$  is close enough to a straight line for large n or t, as the case may be, then also the inverse function must be close to a straight line, with the inverse slope. Hence all the back and forth between  $\mu$  and  $1/\mu$  in renewal theory.

counts n



time t

Figure 14.4: Poisson Process with radical rescaling.

# Strong Law of Large Numbers (SLLN) in Renewal Theory (RT)

Strong Law of Large Numbers (SLLN) in Renewal Theory (RT): If  $\mathbb{E}X < \infty$  and  $N(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(T_n \leq t)$  gives a renewal counting process, then

$$\frac{N(t)}{t} \to \frac{1}{\mathbb{E}X}$$

# 14.4 Renewal Reward Theorem

This is a simple theorem which is a variation on the Strong Law of Large Numbers. Suppose we have a renewal process, and in each cycle of length  $X_i$ , we get a reward

 $R_i$ . Let R(t) := cumulative reward up to time t. Then this is

$$R(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N(t)} R_i + \underbrace{\text{something from the current cycle}}_{i}.$$

where the last term respects the idea that the reward up to t may include only a part of the reward in the complet cycle covering time t. One of the main ideas is that whatever this last term is, it will be negligible compared the left term under reasonable assumptions when t is large.

Although we have a random number of cycles, this is almost deterministic as

$$\frac{R(t)}{t} \to \frac{\mathbb{E}(R)}{\mathbb{E}(X)}$$

We arrive at this intuitively, by saying that the long run average reward per cucle is , and the long run average number of cycles per unit time is 1/|EX|. But this is a mathematical fact that can be proven as a limit with probability one, like the law of large numbers. This holds in the sense of the Strong Law of Large numbers, with the minimal assumptions to make sense of the limit, that  $\mathbb{E}|R|<\infty$  and  $\mathbb{E}X<\infty$ . See text for further details.

# LECTURE 15

# Renewal Theory, Part 2

#### **Class Announcements**

Today we'll be finishing up our discussion on renewal theory. There are many examples in the text, which you should study for motivation. Homework next week will encompass renewal theory.

# 15.1 Age and Residual Life

Reference: Section 3.3 of text. Also, we have already covered aspects of discrete time theory (Section 3.3.1) in homework involving the Kac identity and tail sum formulas in renewal theory.

Recall that we've looked at points on a line according to a Poisson process. We allow a more interesting structure with  $X_1, X_2, \ldots$  iid with  $\mathbb{P}(X_i > 0) = 1$ . Then construct

$$T_n = X_1 + \cdots + X_n$$

the time for the nth renewal. Then via indicators, we have the number of renewals up to and including time t is

$$N(t) := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{1}(T_n \le t)$$

with now familiar duality relation between the distributions of  $T_n$  for n = 1, 2, ... and the distribution of N(t) for  $t \ge 0$ .

We look at various associated stochastic processes, for example the age process, where we define

 $A_t =$  the age of component in use at time  $t = t - T_{N(t)}$ 

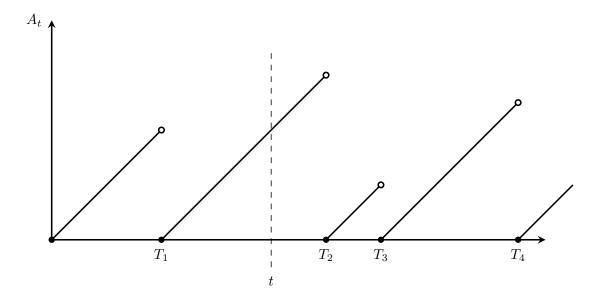


Figure 15.1: Component age diagram. Observe that in this realization, for the particular t shown you should see N(t) = 1 and  $A_t = t - T_1$ . The vertical distance from (t, 0) to  $(t, A_t)$  equals the horizontal distance between  $(T_1, 0)$  and (t, 0).

This yields us a sort of 'sawtooth' process. We look for a closed-form formula for this process. Set the convention  $T_0 := 0$  and notice we have the formula

$$A_t = t - T_{N(t)}$$

In some sense, we have a renewal at time 0, but by convention, we do not count it in N(t). For today's discussion (for convenience and to not enter the study of null-recurrent processes), we assume  $\mathbb{E}X_1 < \infty$ . Here the  $X_i$  are the inter-renewal times, which are the lifetimes in the light bulb metaphor, and can have other meanings, e.g. length of a busy period in a queuing model, or return time of some state in a suitably Markovian process.

The exact distribution of  $A_t$  for a fixed time t is easy in the Poisson case, but it's a lot more difficult in general. In the **Poisson**  $(\lambda)$  case, when N(t) is Poisson $(\lambda t)$ , consider the probability  $\mathbb{P}(A_t > a)$ , by looking back a units of time from time t. Then in terms of renewals, we have no Poisson points in the interval a, which gives (provided a < t)

$$\mathbb{P}(A_t > a) = \mathbb{P}(\text{no renewals in } (t - a, t))$$

$$= \mathbb{P}(N(t - a, t) = 0)$$

$$= e^{-\lambda a}$$

Also in the Poisson case

$$\mathbb{P}(A_t = t) = e^{-\lambda t}$$

and in general  $\mathbb{P}(0 \leq A_t \leq t) = 1$  so for an umbounded liftime distribution the distribution of  $A_t$  will always have an atom of size  $\mathbb{P}(X_1 > t)$  at the value t. Notice via right-tails that in the Poisson case

$$\mathbb{P}(A_t > a) \xrightarrow{t \to \infty} e^{-\lambda a}$$

$$\mathbb{P}(A_t \le a) \xrightarrow{t \to \infty} 1 - e^{-\lambda a}$$

via the obvious convergence of CDFs. That is, the limit distribution of  $A_t$  as  $t \to \infty$  is exponential with rate  $\lambda$  and mean  $\frac{1}{\lambda}$ .

#### **15.1.1** General Lifetime Distribution of *X*

We may ask, what happens for a general lifetime distribution of X? Previously, we took  $X \sim \text{Exponential}(\lambda)$ , which turned out to be the same as the limit distribution of  $A_t$  as  $t \to \infty$ . But this is very special, in fact even a characterization of the Poisson process among all renewal processes.

To look at this, we approach this problem indirectly. Let's suppose that the limit distribution of  $A_t$  can be understood in terms of long run averages. That is, look at  $A_{\infty}$ , a variable with the limit distribution. Then interpret, in the context of renewal theory

$$\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} > a) = \text{long run fraction of time } t \text{ that } A_t > a.$$

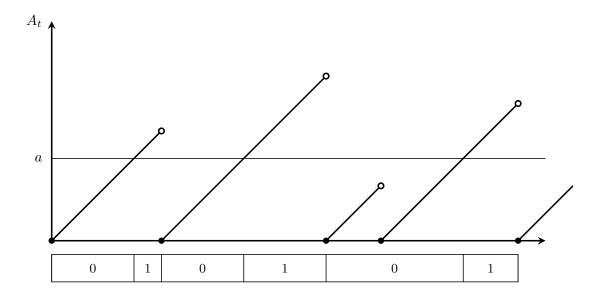


Figure 15.2: Underlying zero-one process, where  $X := \mathbf{1}\{A_t > t\}$ 

Sometimes, the age will be above a, and sometimes below a. This yields an indicator process, where we have 0 when the age is  $\leq a$  and 1 when age is > a. This is the indicator process

$$(1(A_t > a), t \ge 0)$$

Then we can apply the Renewal Reward Theorem from last lecture. Suppose that we get a reward  $R_n$  from each renewal interval  $[T_{n-1}, T_n]$  of length  $X_n$ . Then define

R(t) := accumulated reward up to time t

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{N(t)} R_n + (\text{things in last cycle})$$

We discuss the reward per unit time and have via the Strong Law of Large numbers

$$\frac{R(t)}{t} \to \frac{\mathbb{E}(R)}{\mathbb{E}(X)}$$

with probability 1 of convergence.

Here in the present problem, define

$$R_n = (X_n - a)\mathbb{1}(X_n > a) = (X_n - a)_+$$

where  $x_+ := \max(x, 0)$  Then we see that R(t) is the total length of times  $s \le t$ :  $A_s > a$ . This implies

$$\frac{R(t)}{t} \to \frac{\mathbb{E}R_1}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

by the Renewal Reward Theorem. So we argue this is the limit probability

$$\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} > a) = \lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(A_t > a)$$

This limit exists via an argument of Ergodic theory. Then we have the formula

$$\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} > a) = \frac{\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

However, we can do a little better than this. We claim that  $A_{\infty}$  has probability density

$$\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} \in da)/da = \frac{\mathbb{P}(X_1 > a)}{\mathbb{E}X_1} \qquad (a > 0)$$

This is basically the tail-integral formula for  $\mathbb{E}X_1$  and  $\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+$ . Pitman draws us a picture to convince us of this fact.

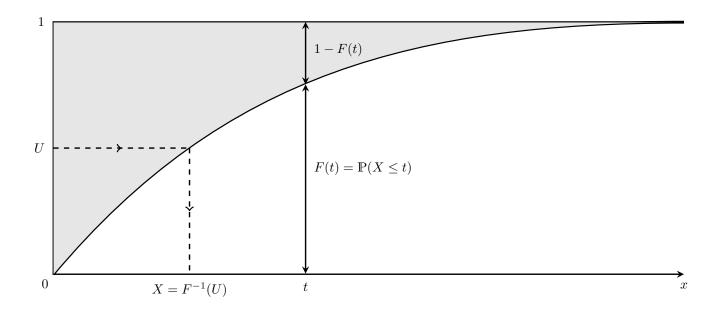


Figure 15.3: For a non-negative X, with CDF  $F(x) = \mathbb{P}(X \leq x)$ , the expectation  $\mathbb{E}X = \int_0^\infty (1 - F(x)) dx$  is the shaded area between the graph of F(x) and level 1 as shown above. For a uniform random variable U along the vertical, we can create X as the inverse CDF of U. (Usual construction for simulation)

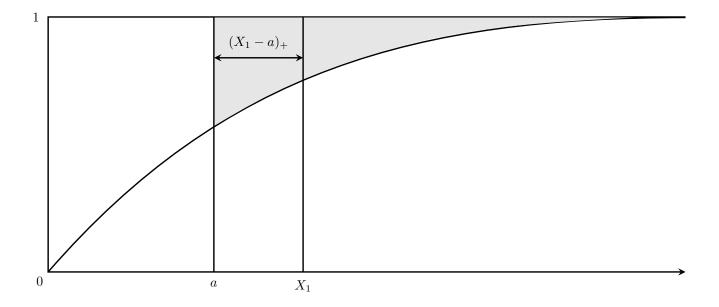


Figure 15.4: Realization of  $\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+$ 

To see where the mean is, Pitman reminds us of the tail integral formula (or integration by parts) for the mean

$$\mathbb{E}(X_1) = \int_0^\infty (1 - F(t)) dt$$
$$= \int_0^\infty f(t)t dt.$$

This is the continuous analog of the tail sum formula in the discrete case. Now we introduce a level a and we ask what is  $\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+$ . Convince yourself that by another application of the tail integral formula,

$$\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+ = \text{area to right of } a \text{ and above the CDF}$$
  
 $\leq \mathbb{E}X_1.$ 

Bringing this into our previous formula, this gives

$$\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} > a) = \frac{\mathbb{E}(X_1 - a)_+}{\mathbb{E}X_1} = \frac{\int_a^{\infty} (1 - F(t)) dt}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

Now it is easy to take  $-\frac{d}{da}$  to obtain the density

$$\frac{\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} \in da)}{da} = -\frac{d}{da}\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} > a) = \frac{1 - F(a)}{\mathbb{E}X_1} = \frac{\mathbb{P}(X_1 > a)}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

Notice that conclusion requires application of 'tools of the trade' in terms of thinking about tail integrals to represent expectations in a different way.

### 15.1.2 A Quick Check

Take  $X_1 \sim \text{Exponential}(\lambda)$ . Then  $1 - F(t) = e^{-\lambda t}$  and  $\mathbb{E}X_1 = \frac{1}{\lambda}$ . Then our formula above gives

$$\frac{\mathbb{P}(A_{\infty} \in da)}{da} = \frac{e^{-\lambda a}}{1/\lambda} = \lambda e^{-\lambda a}$$

which is the familiar density of **Exponential** ( $\lambda$ ), agreeing with what we found more easily in this case using the Poisson counting variables. So the general formula specializes well in the Poisson case when we already know the result.

15.2 Exercise 145

## 15.2 Exercise

Let  $Z_t$  be the residual life at t, or equivalently the remaining lifetime of component in use at t.

- (1) Find a formula for  $Z_t$
- (2) Describe the limit distribution of  $Z_t$  as  $t \to \infty$

**Solution.** To arrive at the formula, we draw a picture of the process (see next page) Then we should expect

$$Z_t = T_{N(t)+1} - t$$

and in the long-run, we know that the limiting probability should be represented by the fraction of time that the process is above a level.

Over a long stretch of time, the difference between the time A is above a level and the time R is above a level comes only comes from the current cycle. So we try

$$\frac{\mathbb{P}(Z_{\infty} \in dz)}{dz} = \frac{\mathbb{P}(X_1 > z)}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

and argue that limit distributions are the same. This is nontrivial but is true by application of the Renewal Reward Theorem. Pitman notes that we should also see Durett 3.3, which looks into the joint distribution:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \mathbb{P}(A_t > a, Z_t > b) = \frac{\mathbb{P}(X_1 > a + b)}{\mathbb{E}X_1}$$

which gives a generalization for two variables by the same token of the Renewal Reward Theorem. Note that setting a=0 or b=0 the two variable formula specializes as it should.

146 15.3 Exercise

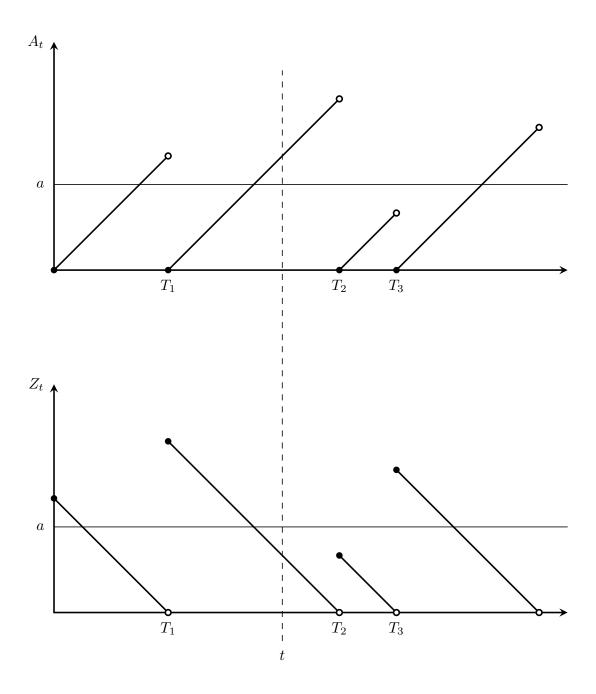


Figure 15.5: We superimpose graphs of the age of a component at time time t,  $A_t$  and its corresponding residual life at time t,  $Z_t$ .

# 15.3 Queueing Theory: Terminology

This is David Kendall's notation from 1953. Our formalism is the notation of the form

where A describes the input, B the service time distribution, and C is the number of servers. That is,

$$A \in \{M, G\}$$

where M is Markov meaning **Poisson** ( $\lambda$ ) for some  $\lambda > 0$  and G or GI is a General Input or Renewal Process Input, (the I is often regarded as indicating independence) and  $\lambda$  is the arrival rate, or equivalently the inverse mean  $\lambda = 1/\mathbb{E}X$  where X is the generic inter-arrival time.

$$B \in \{M, G\}$$

where M is Markov or **Exponential**  $(\mu)$  service and G is the general service time distribution. Note that  $\mu$  is the rate of service.

$$C \in \{1, 2, 3, \dots, \infty\}$$

is the number of servers. See text and https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kendall% 27s\_notation for further discussion.

#### 15.3.1 Main Examples

- (1) We've seen before in the satellite problem " $M/G/\infty$ ". The satellites are put up at **Poisson** ( $\lambda$ ) times, where each satellite lives some lifetime (G), and there is no limit to the number of satellites in orbit. In the text, there is a simple analysis of this model by Poisson tricks in Theorem 2.13.
- (2) We can also consider M/G/1 Queues, with **Poisson** ( $\lambda$ ) input, 1 server, any service time distribution, and assume that service times are iid, independent of arrival times. See text Section 3.2.3.

Let  $Q_t$  be the queue length process, where  $S_n$  is the *n*th service time and  $T_n$  is the *n*th arrival time.

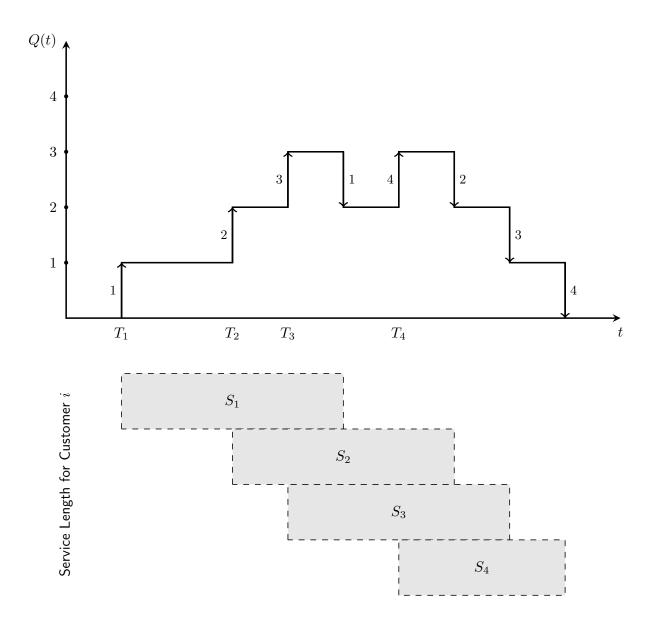


Figure 15.6: Depiction of a M/G/1 FIFO queue process with it's underlying service lengths.

There's a notion of 'Queue-Discipline'. We consider FIFO = First In First Out, and LIFO = Last In First Out. Considering queues, we are typically interested in stability of the queue, average wait times, or questions that do not depend on queue discipline, so we will not pursue this in detail. All the 1 server queues are stable if and only if the arrival rate  $\lambda$  is less than the service rate  $\mu$  (that is,  $\lambda < \mu$ ). This gives positive recurrence. The case of equality  $\lambda = \mu$  gives null recurrence. This means that the queue clears out eventually, but the expected time for this event to return is infinite.

15.4 Little's Formula 149

# 15.4 Little's Formula

This is a famous formula, relating mean rates. Take  $\lambda$  to be the arrival rate in a stable queue  $(i.e.\lambda < \mu)$ , and let L be the long-run average queue length, and let W be the stationary state mean waiting time (not a random variable, in queue + service) per customer.

$$L = \lambda W$$

The text presents a long-run cost argument (Durett p. 131), and we give a similar treatment.

In this picture, we have

$$L = \lim_{t \to \infty} \frac{1}{t} \int_0^t Q_s \, ds$$

where  $Q_s$  is the number of customers in the system at time s. This limit exists by a law of large numbers argument.

Our original picture is the composition of this sum of bars. The integral is the sum of lengths of these bars (size 1 for each customer) over time. Then these bars are being initiated at rate  $\lambda$ .

# LECTURE 16

# Continuous Time Markov Chains, Part 1

# **Class Announcements**

We're moving onto chapter 4, Continuous Time Markov Chains. There are elements from discrete-time Markov chains, some elements of Poisson processes, and some elements of renewal theory. Beyond that we'll cover Brownian motion and Gaussian Processes.

### 16.1 Continuous Time Markov Chains

The idea here is that we want to have a model for a continuous time process

$$(X_t, t \ge 0)$$

where t is a now a continuous nonnegative variable and the range of  $X_t$  is some countable state space. We say this process has the Markov property with a transition semi-group  $(P_t, t \ge 0)$  if

$$\mathbb{P}(X_{s+t} = y \mid X_s = x, \text{ any event determined by } (X_n, 0 \le u \le s)) = P_t(x, y)$$

for a future target y, given that at time s, we arrive at state x. See depiction on next page.

To make sense of this, we need some things. Let us start with a finite S (or countably infinite) on  $\{0, 1, 2, ...\}$ . Then for  $x, y \in S$ , for each fixed  $t \geq 0$ ,  $P_t(x, y)$  should be a transition probability matrix. There is a consistency issue as we vary s and t in this specification. Recall that in discrete time, we have that  $P_1 = P$  is one transition matrix, then we would make  $P_n = P^n$ , which happens if and only if  $P_n P_m = P_{n+m}$ .

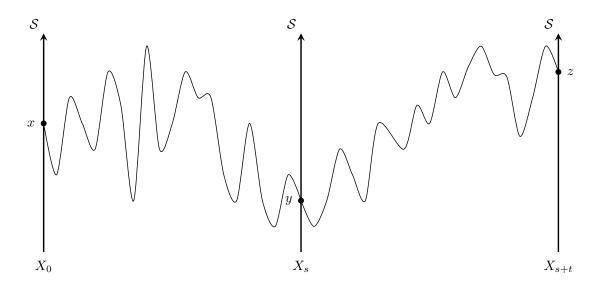


Figure 16.1: Depiction of a continuous time Markov Chain moving from state x to z through an intermediate state y.

This must be so by the addition rule of probability. Now by this same discussion in continuous time, let's use  $\mathbb{P}_x$  as usual to specify  $\mathbb{P}_x(X_0 = x) = 1$ . This simply forces the initial state to be x. More or less by definition, or assumption, we have

$$\mathbb{P}_{s+t}(x,y) = \mathbb{P}_x(X_{s+t} = y)$$

$$= \sum_{y \in S} \mathbb{P}_x (X_s = y, X_{s+t} = z) \quad \text{(conditioning on } X_s)$$

$$\vdots$$

$$= \sum_{y \in S} P_s(x,y) P_t(y,z)$$

From this, we see that analogously to discrete time Markov chains, we must have the identity

$$P_{s+t} = P_s P_t = P_t P_s$$

which we call the semigroup property of the family of transition matrices driving a continuous time Markov chain. The second equality follows from the first equality, under the fact that s+t=t+s.

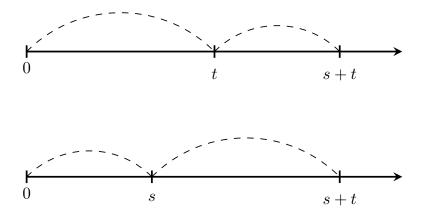


Figure 16.2: Realization of  $P_{s+t} = P_s P_t = P_t P_s$ .

We may ask, how do we create such a transition mechanism? There are two answers which end up more or less the same but from different perspectives.

#### **16.1.1** Derivation 1

First, we can view this via analysis and see that the only candidate for a mechanism like this is to take

$$P_t = e^{Qt},$$

for a suitable matrix Q. Now the natural question is to ask how we compute this.

$$e^{Qt} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(Qt)^n}{n!} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} Q^n$$

via the Taylor series expansion. Now this is well defined whenever Q is a finite matrix or an infinite matrix with bounded elements. That is, we have some finite bound  $\lambda$  where  $|Q(i,j)| \leq \lambda < \infty$  for all i,j. Additionally, we can approach this the compound-interest way

$$e^{Qt} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \left( I + \frac{Qt}{n} \right)^n$$

which we can check is true easily by binomial expansion. Moreover, notice that (by manipulation of power series, just as for exponentials of real or complex numbers)

$$e^{Q(s+t)} = e^{Qs+Qt} = e^{Qs} \cdot e^{Qt}$$

and so if we set  $P_t := e^{Qt}$ , then we see that  $P_{s+t} = P_s P_t$  as desired. It remains to discuss what sort of Q give transition matrices  $P_t$ .

#### 16.1.2 Derivation 2

Alternatively, we can view this via an explicit construction of the process  $(X_t, t \ge 0)$  from suitable building blocks. A good start to do this to consider some transition matrix U (from Durett example 4.1) for a discrete time Markov chain, say  $Y_0, Y_1, Y_2, \ldots$  with transition matrix U. Consider a Poisson process  $(N(t), t \ge 0)$  of rate 1, with iid **Exponential** (1) spacings. Additionally, we assume that the Poisson point process (the times of jumps) is independent of the discrete chain (where the jumps are going). The Poisson process says when the continuous time Markov chain should (try) to move. Now we write down and consider the process  $X_t$  which is by definition

$$X_t := Y_{N(\lambda t)}$$

where  $\lambda > 0$  is a rate parameter, so  $(N(\lambda t), t \geq 0)$  is a Poisson process with rate  $\lambda$ . We can see explicitly  $N(\lambda t) \sim \text{Poisson}(\lambda t)$ . We claim that we get a continuous time Markov chain like this. In fact, we can make every chain with finite state space like this, modulo some technical assumptions (e.g. that the paths of the chain are step functions). Each of the spacings between jumps of the PPP with rate  $\lambda$  is **Exponential** ( $\lambda$ ). Now there is one minor complication in that it can happen that the continuous time chain does not move at one (the case where the discrete chain has a self-transition). But otherwise the continuous time chain jumps at the time of each point of the PPP( $\lambda$ ). See depiction on next page.

#### 16.1.3 Aside: Sum of Exponentials with Random Geometric Index

Let  $\mathcal{E}_1, \mathcal{E}_2, \ldots$  are iid **Exponential**  $(\lambda)$  with mean  $\frac{1}{\lambda}$  and  $G(p) \sim \text{Geometric}(p)$  on  $\{1, 2, \ldots\}$  with mean  $\frac{1}{p}$ , then  $\mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2 + \cdots + \mathcal{E}_{G(p)}$  is **Exponential**  $(p\lambda)$ . That the distribution is exponential can be seen by a Poisson thinning argument. Or by conditioning on G(p) = n to compute the density, and summing out n. To see the rate  $p\lambda$  is correct, condition on G(p) and notice

$$\mathbb{E}\left(\mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2 + \dots + \mathcal{E}_{G(p)}\right) = (\mathbb{E}\mathcal{E}_1)\left(\mathbb{E}G(p)\right) = \frac{1}{\lambda} \frac{1}{p} = \frac{1}{p\lambda}$$

This fact about geometric sums of exponential variables explains why the Poisson construction ensures that the holding time in any particular state, of the continuous time chaim made by timing the steps of a discrete chain with a Poisson process, must be exponentially distributed. This can also be seen as a general property of continuous time chains, by application of the Markov property to establish that the holding time of a state must have the memoryless property, hence be exponential.

Returning to our previous argument, let us find Q for the Poisson construction

$$P_t(x,y) = \mathbb{P}_x \Big( Y_{N(\lambda t)} = y \Big)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-\lambda t} (\lambda t)^n}{n!} U^n(x,y)$$

$$= e^{-\lambda t} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(\lambda t U)^n}{n!} (x,y)$$

$$= \left[ e^{-\lambda t} \cdot e^{\lambda t U} \right] (x,y)$$

$$= e^{Qt}$$

where

$$Q := \lambda(U - I)$$

and  $I = P^0$  is the identity matrix. Here,  $\mathbb{P}_x$  has  $Y_0 = x$  and N in a Poisson point process is independent of Y, and the (x, y) at the right is the evaluation of a matrix at row x and column y.

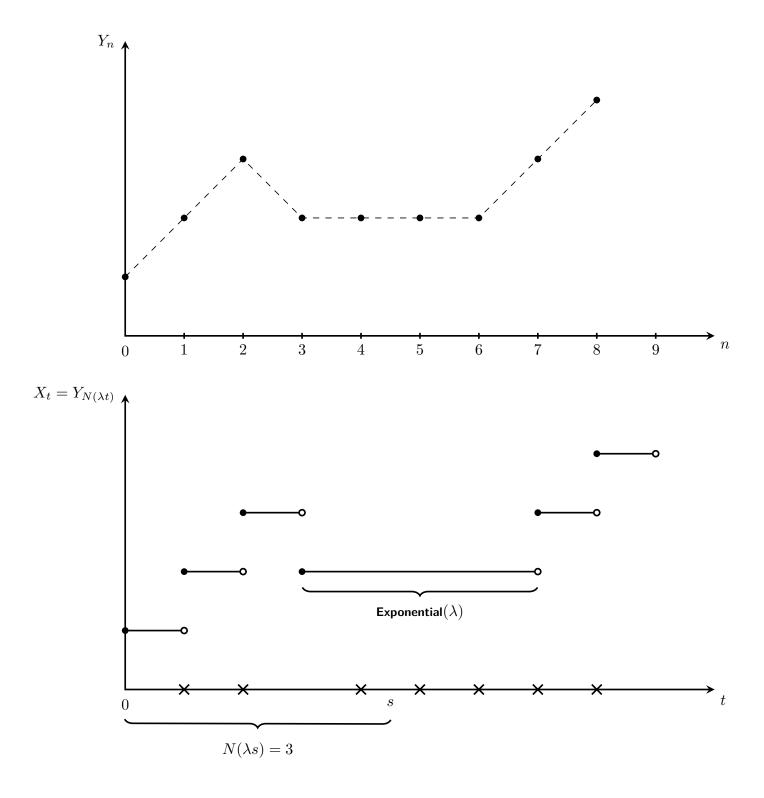


Figure 16.3: Realization of  $(X_t, t \ge 0)$  where  $X_t := T_{N(\lambda t)}$  and its embedded discrete time Markov Chain  $Y_n$ . Observe the *holding times* are exponentially distributed, even for successive transitions i.e. moving from x to x. This construction is presented in Durret Example 4.1.

## 16.2 Simple Example 1: Boring Discrete Markov Chain

Take  $Y_n := n$  for n = 0, 1, 2, ..., which is the (very boring and simple) deterministic Markov chain that increases by 1 at each time. Then the discrete time one step transition matrix is

$$U(x,y) = \mathbf{1}(y = x + 1)$$

This gives

$$X_t = Y_{N(\lambda t)} = N(\lambda t)$$

which is simply a Poisson process with rate  $\lambda$ .

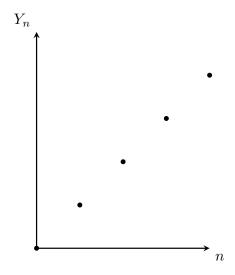


Figure 16.4: Realization of  $Y_n := n$  for  $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ 

# 16.3 Simple Example 2: Compound Poisson Process

Consider  $Y_n = \Delta_1 + \Delta_2 + \cdots + \Delta_n$  for some iid  $\Delta_i$ . Then add a Poisson number of these terms:

$$X_t = \Delta_1 + \Delta_2 + \cdots + \Delta_{N(\lambda_t)}$$

which is called a compound Poisson process. One instance if the Negative Binomial process as per Homework 7. Note that probability generating functions are very handy for this example, as we have seen in our homework.

# 16.4 Interpretation of Rate Matrix Q

We agree that we are creating our semigroup by the matrix formalism in that

$$P_t = e^{Qt}$$

Now this implies that something nice happens when we differentiate

$$\implies \frac{d}{dt}P_t = Qe^{Qt} = e^{Qt}Q = QP_t = P_tQ$$

where via Taylor's expansion,

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(I + Q + \frac{Q^2t^2}{2!} + \frac{Q^3t^3}{3!} + \cdots\right) = 0 + Q + \frac{Q^2}{1!}t + \frac{Q^3t^2}{2!} + \cdots$$

$$= Q\left(I + \frac{Qt}{1!} + \frac{Q^2t^2}{2!} + \cdots\right)$$

$$= Qe^{Qt}$$

Notice that Q commutes with every power of itself, so we get (1) above, which are the Kolmogorov, backwards, and forwards equations respectively.

Formally,  $(P_t, t \ge 0)$  is defined by a matrix system of differential equations, given by the set of Kolmogorov's differential equations  $P_0 = I$  and  $\frac{d}{dt}P_t = QP_t = P_tQ$ . This is fairly abstract, and we will focus on the interpretation of the Q matrix. From the formalism and equations introduced above, we have

$$Q = \frac{d}{dt} P_t \Big|_{t=0^+} = \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \left( \frac{P_t - I}{t} \right)$$

which we can perform for each entry one at a time. Now, notice that for a column vector 1 of all entries 1,

$$P_t 1 = 1$$

Hence,

$$\frac{d}{dt}P_t\mathbb{1} = \frac{d}{dt}\mathbb{1} = 0$$

the zero vector. This implies that

$$Q\mathbb{1} = \lim t \downarrow 0 \frac{d}{dt} \left( P_t \mathbb{1} \right) = 0$$

**Remark:** Now this tells us that all row sums of a rate matrix Q must be identically zero. Additionally, the off-diagonal entries (for  $i \neq j$ ) are

$$Q(i,j) = \lim_{t \to 0} \frac{P_t(i,j)}{t} \ge 0$$

because this is the limit of non-negative things. Hence the main diagonal entries Q(i,i) MUST all be negative to compensate so that the row sums are all 0. Now let us define

$$\lambda_i := -Q(i,i) \geq 0$$

which has the interpretation that the holding time of the chain in state i is **Exponential**  $(\lambda_i)$ . Then for  $i \neq j$ , the

$$\frac{Q(i,j)}{\lambda_i}$$

are transition probabilities when the chain jumps.

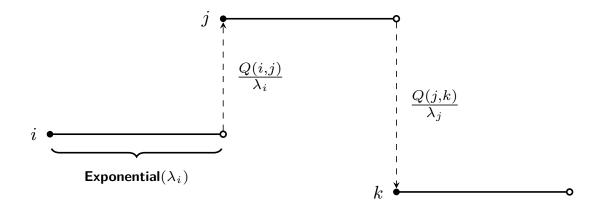


Figure 16.5: Depiction of a continuous Markov chain jumping between states through the Q mechanism.

We keep moving around in the state space, and every time we hold, we hold for an exponential time. This can be read from the rate matrix Q. This is a high level view of the continuous time Markov chain theory. See text for many examples.

# LECTURE 17

# Continuous Time Markov Chains, Part 2

This lecture is fairly informal. We continue our study of the building blocks for Continuous Time Markov Chains, how they are assembled, and their properties. A homework problem illustrate this motivation. Durrett problem 3.12.

# 17.1 Repairman Problem

From this week's homework, recall the cute problem regarding a repairman who completes tasks according to an **Exponential**  $(\mu)$  distribution. However, he is interrupted by a PPP( $\lambda$ ). Recall that in past lectures, when constructing a Poisson Point Process, we considered more than just Poisson points on a line; instead we consider points on a strip of the plane. We relate our repairman problem to a Poisson point process with rate 1 per area.

By our construction (and familiar properties) of Poisson point processes, we have a few facts to take from our depiction on the next page.

- The  $\otimes \otimes \otimes \cdots \otimes \otimes$  similarly are a Poisson point process with rate  $\mu$ .
- The  $\times \times \cdots$  and  $\otimes \otimes \cdots$  points are independent because in the planar Poisson point process, the areas constructed from each of the  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  strips will be disjoint. Precisely, these strips are  $[0, \infty) \times [0, \mu]$  and  $[0, \infty) \times [\mu, \lambda + \mu]$ .
- In the continuous model, let  $T_{\times}$  be the continuous time to the first  $\times$ , so that  $T_{\times} \sim \text{Exponential}(\lambda)$ . Let  $T_{\otimes}$  be the continuous time to the first  $\otimes$ , so that  $T_{\otimes}(\mu)$ . This is a race between independent exponentials (as they are disjoint

162 17.1 Repairman Problem

parts of a PPP). Either by integration, or because the vertical height of the first Poisson point is uniform on an interval of length  $\lambda + \mu$ , and the event  $(T_{\times} < T_{\otimes})$  occurs when this vertical height falls in a subinterval of length  $\lambda$ ,

$$\mathbb{P}(T_{\times} < T_{\otimes}) = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda + \mu}.$$

In better form, let  $T_{\lambda}$  and  $T'_{\mu}$  be two independent **Exponential**  $(\lambda)$  and **Exponential**  $(\mu)$  variables. Then  $\mathbb{P}(T_{\lambda} < T'_{\mu}) = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda + \mu}$ , and the event  $(T_{\lambda} < T'_{\mu})$  is independent of  $T_{\lambda} \wedge T'_{\mu} := \min(T_{\lambda}, T'_{\mu})$ .

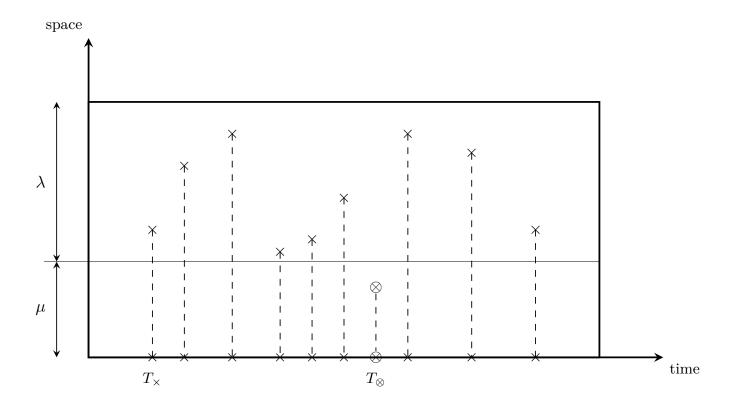


Figure 17.1: Realization of the repairman problem. On the time axis, we have a merged PPP with rate  $\mu + \lambda$ . This realization is a distilled rendition from the depictions presented in lecture.

Now, bringing these ideas back to our homework problem, given that the repairman is interrupted 6 times, the waiting time until the first completion is still the first point of a Poisson  $(\mu)$  process. Pitman gives that this picture of the Poisson point process makes this question a lot more trivial than it may seem. The last spacing before  $T_{\otimes}$  is **Exponential**  $(\lambda + \mu)$ . This is a race between exponentials, so given that the repairman finishes the task, he must have done so at a faster rate.

17.3 Further Remarks 163

A good question asked in class: What happens in this model if interruptions are a renewal process? Would the rate of completions stay the same? The above argument can be adapted as follows. The answer is yes, the repair rate per unit time stays the same, no matter what the interruption process. In fact, you can condition on the times of interruptions, say

$$0 < t_1 < t_2 < \cdot$$

so these are now fixed times, e.g. any finite list of fixed times, or any infinite list increasing to infinity, and the set of times when the repairman completes a job is the set of points of a PPP with rate  $\mu$ . Here is one way to see this. By the memoryless property of the exponential, whenever there is an interruption, in terms of time to finishing the next job, the repairman is indifferent between continuing to work on the current job, or starting a new one. Either way, the time till the next completion will be  $\exp(\mu)$ . Or, look at the time T to first completed job and consider the probability  $\mathbb{P}(T > t)$ . If say  $0 < t_1 < t_2 < t$  this event occurs iff the first job was not completed in time  $t_1$  the next job was not completed in time  $t_2 - t_1$ , and the following job was not completed in time  $t - t_2$ . So

$$\mathbb{P}(T > t) = e^{-\mu t_1} e^{-\mu(t_2 - t_1)} e^{-\mu(t - t_2)} = e^{-\mu t}$$

hence T is  $\exp(\mu)$ . The same argument can be continued to show that regardless of the choice of interruption times  $t_i$ , the times of completion of jobs are the points of a  $PPP(\mu)$ . This problem is very instructive for understanding the implications of the memoryless property of the exponential spacings between arrivals in a PPP with constant rate.

# 17.2 Further Remarks

Moreover, looking at  $T_{\otimes}$  as the time to first  $\otimes$  as  $T_{\otimes} = \mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E} + \cdots + \mathcal{E}_N$ , where the  $\mathcal{E}_i$  are the **Exponential**  $(\lambda + \mu)$  spacings before the points either  $\times$  or  $\otimes$ . We know

$$\mathbb{P}(N=n) = \mathbb{P}(\overbrace{\times \times \times \times \times}^{n-1} \otimes) = \left(\frac{\lambda}{\lambda + \mu}\right)^{n-1} \left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda + \mu}\right)$$

which implies N is Geometric  $\left(\frac{\mu}{\lambda+\mu}\right)$ . In this model, we have that N is independent of  $\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2,\mathcal{E}_3,\ldots$ . We see then that the **Exponential**  $(\mu)$  time  $T_{\otimes}$  is represented in this picture as the sum of a **Geometric**  $(\frac{\mu}{\lambda+\mu})$  number of copies of iid **Exponential**  $(\lambda+\mu)$ . Therefore, the poisson strip model offers an explanation and proof of the basic fact that if  $\mathcal{E}_1,\mathcal{E}_2,\ldots$  are iid **Exponential**  $(\nu)$  and N is independent of these with **Geometric** (p) on  $\{1,2,3,\ldots\}$ , then

$$\mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2 + \dots + \mathcal{E}_N \stackrel{d}{=}$$
Exponential  $(\nu p)$ 

where  $\nu = \lambda + \mu$ , and  $p = \frac{\mu}{\lambda + \mu}$ . You should also be able to check this by a density computation, by conditioning on N and using the fact that the sum of n i.i.d. exponentials  $(\nu)$  has the gamma $(n, \nu)$  density.

# 17.3 Analogies Between Discrete and Continuous Time Markov Chains

Suppose  $Y_n$  for n = 0, 1, 2, ... is a discrete time Markov chain with transition matrix P and  $Y_0 = y$  for some y in state space S. Let

$$H_y := \min\{n \ge 1 : Y_n \ne y\}$$

That is,  $H_y$  is the *holding time* in state y.

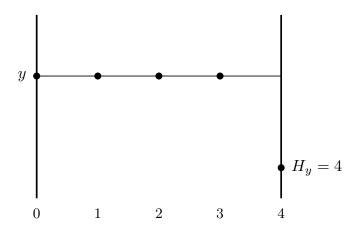


Figure 17.2: Depiction of  $H_y = 4$ , where  $(Y_n)_{n \ge 0}$  is a discrete time Markov chain.

We notice that by definition,  $H_y \in \{1, 2, 3, ...\}$ . Then except in trivial cases with P(y, y) = 1, we have

$$\mathbb{P}(H_u < \infty) = 1$$

Then assuming this is not absorbing (that is, P(y, y) < 1), we have that

$$\mathbb{P}(H_y = n) = [P(y, y)]^{n-1} (1 - P(y, y)), \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \dots$$

where this bracketed factor denotes the power of the single element and not the matrix power. That is,  $H_y \sim \text{Geometric}(1 - P(y, y))$ .

Now, let  $J_y := Y_{H_y}$ , which we know for sure is not equal to y. Then we may look into some other state z which has

$$\mathbb{P}(J_y = z) = \frac{P(y, z)}{1 - P(y, y)}$$

which holds for  $z \neq y$ . Also, you easily check that  $H_y$  and  $J_y$  are independent. Bringing this foward into continuous time, take  $(X_t, t \geq 0)$  to be a continuous time Markov chain with the semigroup of transition matrices  $(P_t, t \geq 0)$  where  $P_t = e^{Qt}$ . Recall from last lecture that we found

$$Q = \lim_{t \downarrow 0} \frac{(P_t - I)}{t}$$

17.5 Corollary

which is the matrix of transition rates. We may ask similar things as before in terms of holding times. Let y be a state. We write

$$H_y := \inf\{t > 0 : X_t \neq y\}$$

The idea here is that we are holding for a while and then jumping to another state. Then we have the following analogies from discrete time that carry over to this continuous time discussion. In continuous time, we want to think about (1-P(y,y)) in a small amount of time. Now because this converges to 0, we want to normalize (divide by) t. Looking at the formula for Q above, we notice that

$$H_y \sim \operatorname{Exponential}\left(\lambda_y\right) \ \text{where} \ \lambda_y := -Q(y,y)$$

Let  $J_y := X_{H_y}$ , which is the state that we jump to in the picture above. From the interpretation of relative jump rates as probabilities, we have

$$\mathbb{P}(J_y = z) = \frac{Q(y, z)}{\lambda_y}$$

This is partitioned in a way that is completely analogous to the discrete case. Moreover,  $H_y$  and  $J_y$  are independent in the continuous time setup, as in discrete time. These are basic interpretations of the transition rates of a continuous time Markov chain in terms of its successive holds and jumps.

# 17.4 Corollary

We have a very simple way of simulating a continuous time Markov chain. If we start at y, for each state  $z \neq y$ , we have an exponential variable  $\mathcal{E}_{yz}$  with rate  $Q(y, z) \geq 0$ . We assume these are variables are independent, and let

$$H_y := \min_z \mathcal{E}_{yz}, \quad J_y := \arg\min_z \mathcal{E}_{yz}$$

Then  $(X_t, t \ge 0)$  iid and  $X_0 = y$  is constructed as  $X_t = y$  for  $0 \le t < H_y$  and  $X_{H_y} = J_y \ne y$ . Then given  $J_y = z$ , we iterate, with a fresh set of independent exponentials  $E_{zw}$ , and so on. It is a fact that in the race of exponentials, the time to completing the race is independent of the win

# 17.5 Examples

A very simple example is the two-state Markov chain, which is also known as the alternating exponential renewal process. Let these states be 0 and 1 with

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} Q(0,0) & Q(0,1) \\ Q(1,0) & Q(1,1) \end{bmatrix} =: \begin{bmatrix} -\lambda & \lambda \\ \mu & -\mu \end{bmatrix}$$

17.5 Examples

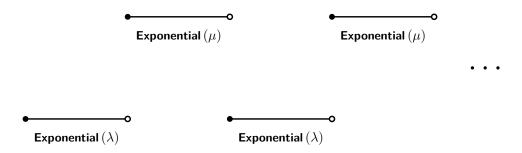


Figure 17.3: Realization of an alternating renewal process.

The picture illustrates why this is also called an alternating exponential renewal process, as we are simply flipping between the two rates. Now with our same terminology from before,

$$P_t(x,y) = \left[e^{Qt}\right](x,y)$$

which is given by an explicit formula in Durett. We have done this in our homework in the discrete case. There is a similarly simple formula which can be found via the differential equations quite easily. Now, we may ask what happens in the limit. Recall that a large rate means that an event happens fast. Imagine the case where  $\lambda$  is small and  $\mu$  is large. Then this gives a typical picture with short holds in state 1 and long holds in state 0:

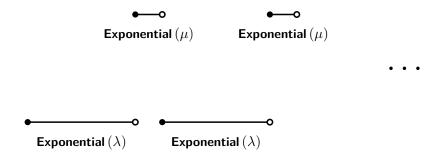


Figure 17.4: Realization of an alternating renewal process, where  $\lambda > \mu$ .

In terms of renewal theory, we have an iid cycle every time we drop back down to 0. Appealing to the Renewal Reward Theorem, we compare the mean time for the above state against the mean time for the cycle:

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} P_t(x, 1) = \frac{1/\mu}{1/\lambda + 1/\mu} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda + \mu}$$

Similarly, for  $P_t(x,0)$ , we have limit  $\frac{\mu}{\lambda+\mu}$ . When  $\mu$  is much larger than  $\lambda$ , the chain

17.5 Examples 167

moves quickly from 1 to 0 and slowly from 0 to 1. So in the long run it is more likely to be found in state 0  $\,$